

THE MAJOR EVENTS THAT SHAPED THE HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA SINCE 1000AD TO INDEPENDENCE

BY LUWAGGA SIMON WALUGEMBE

NDEJJE DAY VOCATIONAL SECONDARY SCHOOL

TEL: 0776 974545 / 0705253881

EMAIL: simluwa@gmail.com

PREFACE

This book covers the whole History of South Africa purposely for Ordinary Level (O' Level), but also for Historians at various levels and it is the first of its kind.

To the Historians, this book effectively and sufficiently covers the syllabus. Therefore it is important enough to help you achieve your endeavours.

This book contains sample questions and maps to guide learners during revision.

The language used is simple and appropriate to each level of learning.

FOREWORD

The teaching of South African History has, is still and will proceed a long way in order to achieve the Government aims and objectives of Education.

However, the UNEB trends/changes in marking South African History (P241/4) have created a high demand for updating History teaching notes.

This therefore inspired me as a History teacher to come up with this Edition to meet the demand for up to date approaches.

LUWAGGA SIMON WALUGEMBE

TEL: +256 776 974 545 or +256 702 253 881

NDEJJE DAY VOCATIONAL SECONDARY SCHOOL P.O. BOX 64, BOMBO)

Email: simluwa@gmail.com

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

My gratuity is extended to God Almighty for the gift of wisdom and good health throughout my years of study in the institutions of learning i went through which has enabled me to come up with this piece of work.

I would like to express my sincere appreciation to people who have worked ‘**tooth and nail**’ towards the production of this book most especially the History department and administration of Ndejje Day Vocational Secondary School.

I equally extend great thanks to the History department of N.T.C Kabale headed by Mrs. Bukabeeba Kellen N., Mr. Musoke Eric Katikamu SDA SS, Mr. Ssemanda James Lubiri SS Mengo, and History Department of St. Mugagga SS Kiganda for their intellectual upbringing.

I also send my sincere gratitude to Mr. Ogwal Isaac, Head of Computer department Ndejje Day Voc. SS for the tremendous work done towards the production of this Edition.

However, I acknowledge that any mistake and omission in this Edition is entirely my responsibility and I will be grateful if corrections are drawn into my attention.

DEDICATION

I dedicate this book to my dearest students of Ndejje Day Vocational Secondary School for their support.

In the same spirit, I dedicate this Edition to the staff, History department and the administration of Ndejje Day Vocational Secondary School.

In a special way, I entirely dedicate this book to my beloved parents Mr. and Mrs. Walugembe for educating me. I also extend it to the family of the Late George William Kisubika, my brothers, sisters and friends for their generous support and encouragement.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The major events that shaped the History of South Africa	i
Preface.....	ii
Foreword	iii
Acknowledgement:	iv
Dedication	v
The geographical location of South Africa	6
The earliest inhabitants of South Africa	6
The San	6
Reasons for their migration.....	7
Organisation of the San.....	8
The Khoikhoi	11
Organisation of the khoi khoi	12
Similarities between the san and the khoikhoi.....	14
Differences between San and khoikhoi.....	15
The khoisan.....	15
The migration and settlement of the khoisan.....	16
Organisation of the khoisan	17
The Bantu of South Africa.....	19
Reasons for migration of the Bantu into South Africa	19
Migration and settlement of the Bantu.....	20
Organisation of the Bantu	22
The european interest in South Africa	26
The Dutch/ Boers	26
Reasons for the Dutch coming and settlement at the cape in 1652	27
Problems faced by the early or pioneer Dutch settlers at the cape	28
Solutions to the problms faced.....	29
How the Dutch settlement was established and expanded at the cape	30
Reasons for the Dutch expansion of the colony upto the Fish River.....	32
Effects of the Dutch expansion	32
The Dutch administration at the cape 1652-1795	33
The collapse or decline of the DEICO	34
Effects of the Dutch at the cape	36
The kaffir wars on the Eastern frontier 1770-1879.....	37
Causes of kaffir wars	37
The course of the kaffir wars	38
Effects of the kaffir wars.....	40
Steps taken by the British to end the kaffir wars	41
The British occupation of the cape	43
Reasons for their coming	43
Steps taken by the British to occupy the cape in 1794 - 1806.....	44
The cape under the Batavian Republic	45
The achievements of the Batavian Republic between 1803 and 1806.....	46
Collapse of the Batavian administration	46

The British reforms at the cape.....	47
Reforms introduced by Lord Charles Somerset.....	49
Effects of Somerset's reforms.....	50
The passing of Black circuit courts in 1812.....	51
The Great Trek/ Afrikaner exodus 1835-1852.....	52
Causes of the Great trek.....	52
The course of the Great trek.....	54
Problems faced by the trekkers.....	57
Effects of the Great trek.....	58
The Great trek wars.....	59
Causes of the battle of Vegkop.....	59
Why were the Ndebele defeated at the battle.....	60
Effects of the battle of Vegkop.....	61
The battle of the Blood River 1838.....	61
Causes of the battle of the Blood River.....	61
Effects of the battle of Blood River.....	62
The establishment of Natal Boer Republic.....	63
Factors/reasons for the establishment of Natal Boer Republic.....	64
The British annexation of Natal Republic in 1843.....	64
Effects of the annexation of Natal Republic.....	66
The British annexation of Orange Free States (O.F.S) 1848.....	67
Factors for the annexation of Orange Free States (O.F.S).....	67
Effects of the annexation of Orange Free State.....	68
The British annexation of Transvaal 1877.....	69
Reasons for annexation of Transvaal Boer Republic.....	70
Effects of the british annexation of Transvaal.....	71
The Pedi-resistance of 1861-1879.....	71
Causes of the Pedi resistance.....	72
Effects of the Pedi resistance.....	72
Factors/reasons for the defeat of the Pedi.....	73
Afrikaner nationalism.....	73
Factors for the rise of Afrikaner nationalism.....	74
Steps taken to promote Afrikaner nationalism.....	74
Effects of Boer nationalism on south african communities.....	75
The Great Mfecane period and its after-math.....	75
The causes of the Mfecane crisis.....	76
The effects of the Mfecane.....	78
Course of Mfecane.....	80
Nation building in South Africa.....	81
Dingiswayo the wanderer and the Mthethwa state:.....	81
Achievements of Dingiswayo.....	81
The collapse of the Mthethwa state.....	83
The rise of Shaka and Zulu nation (1783 – 1828).....	83
The origin of the Zulu state /kingdom.....	83
Factors for the rise of the Zulu state/Shaka.....	84
Shaka's administrative and military reforms/changes/achievements.....	85

Problems faced by Shaka	87
Organisation of the Zulu state	87
The Zulu state after Shaka	89
The reign of Dingane	89
Problems faced by Dingane	90
The reign of Mpande	90
Problems faced by Mpande	91
Why Dingane was defeated by his brother Mpande	92
The reign of Ceteswayo	92
Problems faced by cetewayo	93
How the above problems were solved by Cetewayo	94
The collapse of the Zulu state	95
The zulu response to the establishment of British colonialism	96
The Anglo-Zulu war of 1879/the Isandhalwana war	96
Causes of the Anglo-Zulu war of 1879	96
Effects of the 1879 Anglo-Zulu war	97
Factors for the defeat of the Zulu	98
The Bambata/Bambatha rebellion of 1906	99
Causes of the Bambata rebellion	99
Effects of the 1906 Bambata rebellion	100
Reasons why the bambata rebellion of 1906 failed	101
The Basuto (Sotho) nation	101
Organization of Sotho state	102
Mosheshe's contribution to Basuto land	104
Problems faced by Mosheshe between 1815 and 1868	106
How Mosheshe handled and solved the problems	107
Mosheshe's relationship with Europeans after 1830	107
Factors for the decline or downfall of the Sotho/Basuto nation	108
The war of guns/disarmament war of 1880	109
Causes of the war of guns	109
Effects of the war of guns	110
Factors for the success of the Basuto	110
The Swazi nation	111
Factors for the rise and growth of Swazi nation	112
The organisation of the Swazi nation	112
How Sobhuza 1 managed to build a strong swazi nation	113
Changes introduced by king Mswati 1	114
Missionaries in South Africa	114
Reasons for the coming of Christian Missionaries in South Africa	115
Problems faced by christian missionaries in South Africa	116
Activities of christian missionaries in South Africa	116
Effects of missionary activities in South Africa	117
The role of christian missionaries in the colonisation of South Africa	119
The Dutch Reformed Church (DRC)	120
Reasons why the Dutch Reformed Church was formed	120
Activities of the Dutch Reformed Church	121

Effects of the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC).....	121
Independent church movements	122
Why were Independent church movements formed	123
Problems faced by independent churches	123
Activities of the Independent churches.....	124
The contribution of the African Independent churches	124
The mineral discovery and mining in South Africa 1867 – 1886.....	126
The situation before the discovery of minerals in South Africa	126
The situation /conditions after the discovery of minerals	128
Impact of the mineral discovery on the people of South Africa	129
Political effects of the mineral discovery in South Africa.....	131
Economic effects of the mineral discovery in South Africa	132
Social effects of the mineral discovery in South Africa	133
How mineral discovery affected the relationship between the Boers and the British	134
The Anglo-Boer wars in South Africa.	135
The first Anglo-Boer war 1880-1881	135
Causes of the 1 st Anglo-Boer war of 1880-1881	135
The course of the 1 st Anglo Boer war	136
Effects of the 1 st Anglo-Boer war	137
The Pretoria convention of 1881.....	138
Terms of the Pretoria convention.....	138
Why the Pretoria convention was called in 1881.....	139
Results of the Pretoria convention of 1881	139
The Jameson raid of 1895	140
Causes of the Jameson raid of 1895.....	141
Effects of the Jameson raid of 1895	142
Reasons why the Jameson raid of 1895 failed	143
The Uitlanders.....	144
John Cecil Rhodes 1853 -1902	144
Paul Kruger 1825 – 1904	145
The second Anglo Boer war of 1899 – 1902	147
Causes of the 2 nd Anglo-Boer war	147
The course of the 2 nd Anglo-Boer war.....	148
Effects of the second Anglo – Boer war	149
The Vereeniging peace treaty of 1902	151
Factors that led to the signing of the Vereeniging treaty of 1902.....	151
The terms of the Vereeniging treaty	151
Effects of the Vereeniging treaty of 1902.....	152
The federation of South African Republics	153
Reasons for the federation and union.....	153
Failure of the earlier federation attempts	154
The National convention or conference of 1908.....	155
Why the National convention of 1908 was called in south africa	155
Terms of the National convention.....	156
Results of the National convention or conference of 1908	157
The South African act of union of 1910	157

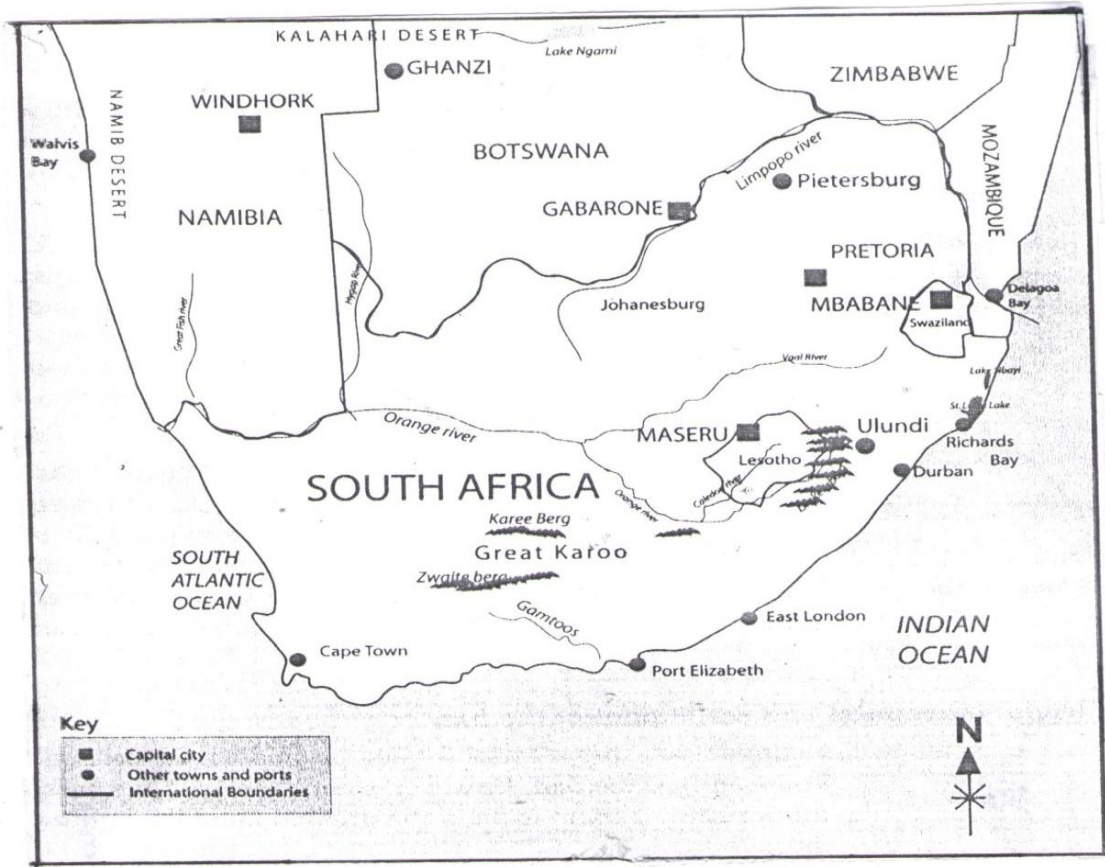
Reasons for the formation of the Act of union in 1910	157
Terms of the 1910 Act of union.....	158
Results of the 1910 Act of union in south africa	159
The Apartheid policy and the struggle for freedom in South Africa (1948-1994)	160
Factors that led to the introduction of apartheid in South Africa in 1948	160
How apartheid was practiced/applied in South Africa	161
Effects of the apartheid policy	164
The Bantustans policy in South Africa	165
Reasons for the formation of the Bantustans	166
Effects of the Bantustans	167
The reaction/response towards the apartheid policy	168
Apartheid wars or uprisings in South Africa	169
The Sharpeville massacre or demonstration of 1960.....	169
Causes of the 1960 Sharpeville massacre	170
Effects of the 1960 Sharpeville massacre	171
The Soweto uprisings of 1976	172
Causes of the Soweto uprising of 1976.....	172
Effects of the Soweto uprisings of 1976.....	173
Problems/obstacles to the liberation struggle in South Africa.....	174
Factors that facilitated the struggle for freedom in South Africa	176
The African National Congress (ANC)	177
Aims of the African National Congress (ANC).....	177
The role of the African National Congress in the liberation of South Africa.....	178
The Organisation of African Unity (OAU).....	178
The role played by OAU in the liberation of South Africa.....	179
The role of the frontline states in the liberation of South Africa.....	180
The role of the United Nations Organisation in the liberation of South Africa.....	180
Role of personalities in the liberation struggle of South Africa	181
Nelson Mandela	181
Govan Mbeki 1910 – 2001	183
Walter Sisulu 1912 – 2003.....	185
Steve (Stephen) Biko 1947 – 1977	185
Oliver Tambo 1917 – 1993	186
Robert Mongaliso Sobukwe 1924- 1978	187
Clement Kadalie.....	187
Pixley Ka-Isaka Seme	189
Reasons for the collapse of apartheid in 1994	190
Germany rule in Namibia (South-West Africa).....	191
Reasons for Germany occupation of Namibia.....	191
How the Germans acquired South-West Africa/Namibia.....	192
Effects of the German rule on south Africa	193
The Nama-Herero rebellion of 1904-1907	194
Causes of the Nama-Herero rebellion.....	195
Effects of the Nama-Herero	196

THE GEOGRAPHICAL LOCATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

Geographically, South Africa occupies the Southern part on the African continent.

South Africa covers Countries like the Republic of South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia etc.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING SOUTH AFRICAN COUNTRIES



THE EARLIEST INHABITANTS OF SOUTH AFRICA

- The earliest inhabitants of South Africa were; the San, Khoikhoi, Khoisan and the Bantu.
- They were followed by the Boers/Dutch and the British.

THE SAN

ORIGIN OF THE SAN

- The San were the earliest inhabitants of South Africa.
- They were known by various names i.e. they were called Bushmen by the Europeans especially the Boers.
- They were also known as the Twa or Roa i.e. the Xhosa called them Twa while the Sotho called them Roa.

- The origin of the San is not clear.
- Probably, they originated from East and Central Africa moving South wards
- The San belonged to the Bushmanoid family/ race.
- They descended directly from the early men known as Australopithecus (Southern Apes)
- The origin and settlement of the San can be traced by similar rock paintings in East, Central and South Africa.

REASONS FOR THEIR MIGRATION

- The need for new hunting grounds forced the San to migrate into South Africa since they were hunters.
- Internal conflicts forced the San to migrate to South Africa
- External attacks from external tribes like the Bantu forced the San to migrate.
- The San wanted to spread their culture in South Africa
- The harsh climatic conditions in their cradle land also led to migration of the San
- Over population in their cradle land also led to migration of the San into South Africa.
- The outbreak of natural calamities like floods, earth quakes etc forced them to migrate.
- The occurrence of famine and drought in their cradle land also forced the San to migrate searching for food since they were food/fruit gatherers.
- The love for adventure i.e. the San wanted to see/ discover new areas beyond their original settlement.
- The need to search for new fishing grounds led to their migration into South Africa.
- The outbreak of diseases like sleeping sickness, small pox, malaria etc forced the San to migrate.
- Group influence (band wagon/ peer influence i.e. the San left their cradle land because some of their relatives/ friends had left.

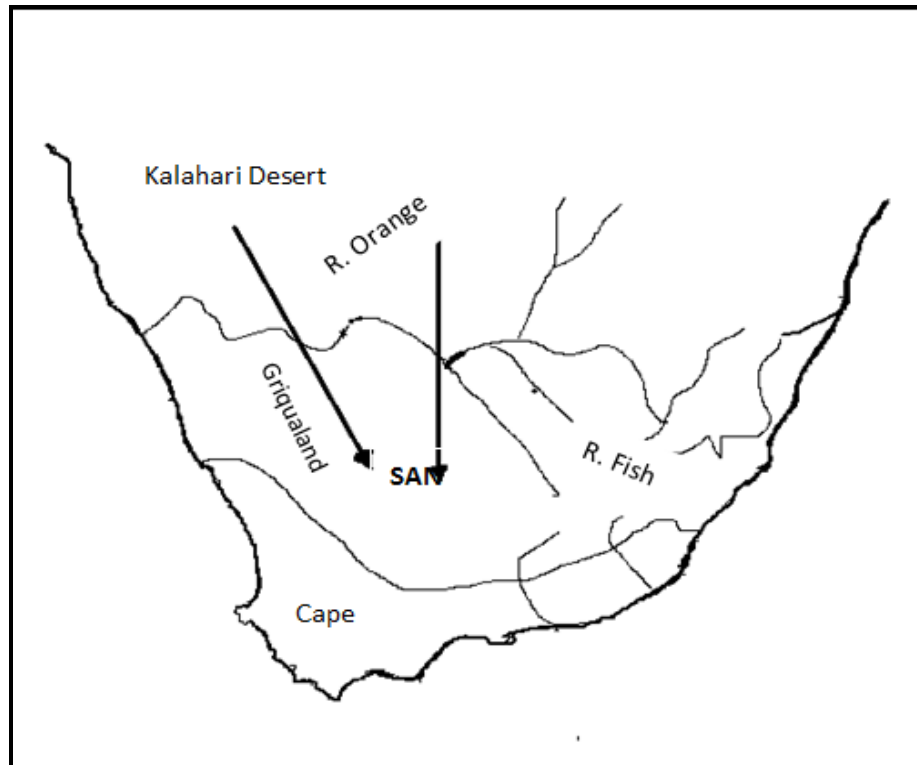
MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE SAN

Describe the migration and settlement of the San

- The origin of the San is not clear.
- Probably, they came from East and Central Africa to South Africa.
- Their migration began around 1000 A.D from Central and East Africa moving south wards.
- Their settlement in South Africa followed that of the early men known as Australopithecus (Southern Apes)
- At first, the San occupied great parts of South Africa as soon as they arrived in the region.
- The San first settled in Damara land and Batlapin
- They later spread to Griqualand West.
- Some San spread to Transkei.
- Others occupied highlands of Drakensburg, Brankenstein and Lesotho.
- Others settled along river Orange and settled North of it.

- Some San remained in the northern part of present Cape Province.
- By 19th century the San were mainly in Namibia and Angola.
- The San later spread to Namibia and Kalahari Desert and others spread to Botswana
- This was as a result of the coming of the Bantu who displaced them to drier areas.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE SAN



ORGANISATION OF THE SAN

Describe the way of life of the san by 1800

Describe the political, social and economic organization of the san

How did the san live by 1800?

Political Organization

- The San had a decentralized system of authority i.e. had no Kings or centralized authority.
- Their leadership was not hereditary and at any occasion they would have a new head.
- In most cases, the work of the government was done at the level of each settlement with the help of the headman.
- The headman ruled according to acceptable norms and traditions of society.
- The San lived in numerous small isolated settlements of about 25-70 people.
- The largest settlement was between 200-500 people but such settlements were rare.
- Each settlement was practically independent of the other.

- The headman was assisted by a council of elders whose decisions he implemented without question.
- The headman also exercised full ritual powers i.e. he presided-over initiation and maintained law and order.
- Council meetings were regularly held to handle important matters like disputes.
- Membership to the council was open to all male adults.
- Most of the political affairs were decided by male adults/elders of respectable age.
- At a higher political level, the San were divided into three large groups i.e. the Northern San, the Central San and the Southern San.
- The San had neither a permanent army nor police for defence or security i.e. lacked a standing army but the youth provided security as need arose.
- The youth used simple weapons like arrows and bows for defence.
- They were friendly to other people unless provoked or attacked.
- Every group (band) had a responsibility of protecting their land against intrusion from other groups.
- Their women had no say in politics and were not respected in society.

Social organization

- The family was the basic social unit where relatives lived.
- The San had weak family ties and never cared for the sick and old people.
- Members of the same group related through marriage.
- Polygamous marriages were highly encouraged though monogamy also existed.
- Marrying many wives was a source of prestige and social harmony.
- They encouraged early marriages i.e. boys could marry at the early age of 14-15 years while girls of 7-8 years.
- After marriage, the man (groom/son-in-law) could join the family of his bride (wife) hunting for them until the birth of their first child.
- By hunting and providing food for the in-laws, the boy was paying bride price.
- After having their first born, the couple could then be allowed to farm their own home.
- San women were so courageous and gave birth alone. They could cut the baby's umbilical cord with the stick. The San women produced very few children 3-4 because of their hunting and wandering life.
- The San practiced endogamous marriages i.e. married within the same clan.
- They were also good dancers and mostly danced at the appearance of the new/half/full moon and after a good hunt.
- Initiation ceremonies were very important and serviced the cultural and adulthood roles. For example, boys were trained in skills of hunting for earning their living.
- The San trained the youth in the skills of how to use local herbs and medicines to treat certain diseases, stages in life like birth, puberty, marriage and death.
- This was done by sprinkling the person with the gall of a sacrificed animal.
- They drank fermented juice and honey during their social ceremonies.
- The San lived in temporally shelters, caves and under shades of big trees.
- They had a strong love for art and were great painters who recorded major events of their life, through pictures that decorated walls of their caves and rocks.

- The San never lived a permanent life but always wandered looking for hunting grounds and predominantly lived a nomadic life.
- Their language was characterized by a click sound.
- The San were also religious people and believed in life after death and a Supreme Being.
- They worshipped a Supreme Being called Kaggen/Huwe/Hishe/Thora who was believed to be the creator.
- On earth, Kaggen manifested himself through the praying mantis, thunder, and lightening.
- Accordingly, prayers and sacrifices were offered to Him for blessing and rain especially during the dry season.
- They treated the praying mantis with a lot of respect as a symbol of wealth and fortune.
- The mantis was thought to live in the sky with souls of the dead men.
- The San had limited vocabulary/numerical knowledge that stopped at three.
- They wore ornaments of ostrich eggshells, animal skins, leaves, and feathers.
- Elders were a source of knowledge; wisdom and truth i.e. were taken as custodians of knowledge.
- Social affairs were also decided by male elders.

Economic organization

- Among the San, land was a communal property i.e. it was communally owned.
- Though peaceful, they jealously protected their hunting grounds against any intruders.
- Their life mainly depended on hunting. They hunted small and big animals like cheetahs, zebra, hyenas as well as birds like ostrich, vultures, etc.
- Sometimes, the San would hunt for the Khoikhoi.
- They used poisonous arrows and bows to hunt down small animals like squirrels.
- Large animals were trapped in big pits.
- They were also good at tracking animals. They followed the tracks of a wounded animal until they found it.
- They neither grew crops nor cultivated i.e. never carried out crop growing.
- They kept no animal except a domestic dog for hunting and defence.
- They gathered and collected wild roots, tubers, fruits, like berries, oranges, mangoes, locusts, wild honey, white ants and caterpillars.
- They also carried out fishing as an activity in numerous Rivers like; Tsomo, Kei, Vaal, Umzimvubu, etc.
- There was division of labour i.e. men hunted as women gathered food.
- The women used sharpened sticks to dig tubers and roots.
- The San had little material wealth/weak economy.
- They however, raided other communities for wealth and food.
- They also carried out traded with their neighbours like the Khoikhoi.
- They had no idea about iron working but made tools out of stones, bone material and sticks.

- They also carried out pottery producing clay materials like pots.

THE KHOIKHOI

- The Khoi khoi were the second group of people to settle in S.A after the San.
- They were known by various names e.g. Hottentos by the Europeans, Herders because they kept animals e.g. cattle, goats and sheep.
- They referred to themselves as Khoikhoi meaning men of men because they were a bit taller than the San and most powerful of all men.
- Like the San, their origin is not clear.
- They are said to have originated from central or East Africa moving southwards.
- They shared most of the characteristics of the San e.g. click sound, flat faces, yellowish or light skinned etc.
- Like the San, the Khoikhoi belonged to the Bushmanoid family or race.
- The Khoi khoi didn't carry out cultivation before the coming of the Bantu and depended on pastoralism.

REASONS FOR MIGRATION OF THE KHOIKHOI

- The reasons for the migration of the Khoikhoi are not clear but the following have been agreed upon by historians;
- Outbreak of diseases in their cradle land like sleeping sickness, small pox etc. forced the Khoi khoi to migrate to S.A.
- The desire by the youth to be independent also led to the migration of the Khoikhoi.
- The occurrence of famine led to migration of the Khoi khoi.
- The Khoi khoi migrated to S.A due to outbreak of drought in their cradle land.
- The outbreak of natural calamities e.g. floods, earth quakes etc. forced the Khoi khoi to migrate to S.A.
- The nomadic way of life of the Khoi khoi i.e. they used to move from place to place looking for water and pasture for their animals.
- Over population in their homeland forced them to migrate to look for new areas for settlement.
- Civil wars or internal conflicts led to the migration of the Khoi khoi.
- External attacks from their neighbours e.g. Bantu also forced them to migrate to S.A.
- The desire to look for new fishing grounds might have forced Khoikhoi to leave their cradle land.
- The Khoikhoi migrated due to harsh climatic conditions in their home land.

THE MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE KHOIKHOI

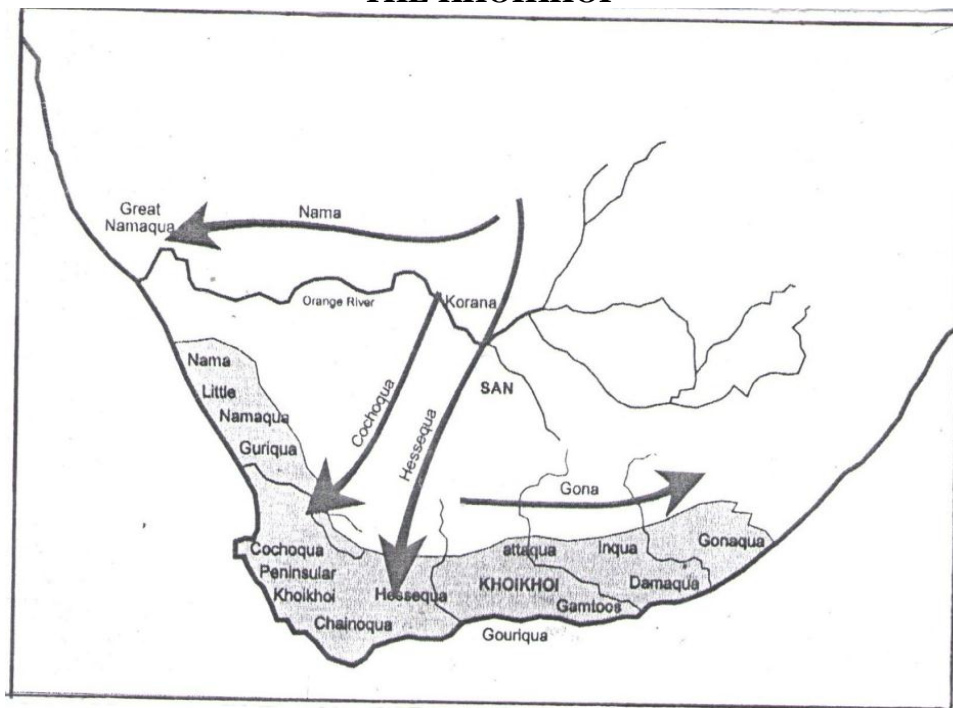
Describe the course of the Khoikhoi

How did the Khoikhoi move to S. Africa?

- The origin of the Khoikhoi is not clear.
- They are said to have migrated from Central and East Africa moving southwards.
- Their migration started between the 9th and 13th century.
- The Khoikhoi moved in three main groups but later settled in four groups.

- The first group was known as the Cape Khoikhoi (**cochogua**)
- The Cochogua settled in the Cape Province or cape peninsular.
- The second group was known as the Eastern Khoikhoi (**Gona**)
- This group settled around areas between River fish and River Keiskama.
- They also settled around the Fish River valley.
- The third group was known as the Nama Khoikhoi or Western Khoikhoi.
- They moved west wards along River Orange.
- This group settled in Little Namaqualand and Great Namaqualand in Namibia.
- The fourth group was known as the Korana which broke away from the first group.
- This group settled in Griqualand.
- By the 15th century, the Khoikhoi were living in Saldahan bay where the early Portuguese found them in 1487.
- Another Portuguese account state that the Khoikhoi settled in Massel bay and Table Bay.
- The Khoikhoi also occupied areas around the Buffalo coast and the Atlantic coast.
- By the 17th century, the Khoi khoi were widely spread in Orange Free State.
- The Khoikhoi were later pushed into Kalahari Desert, Namib desert and Angola desert after the coming of the Bantu.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE KHOIKHOI



ORGANISATION OF THE KHOI KHOI

The Khoikhoi were organized politically, economically and socially as shown below:

Political organization

- The Khoikhoi were more organized than the San.
- They were decentralized in nature i.e. they didn't have kings
- They were ruled by clan leaders.
- The clan leaders solved problems and misunderstandings within their clans.
- The clan leaders had a lot of powers and influence within their clans.
- They also had chiefs or headmen who administered the camps.
- The chief was appointed from the most powerful clan in the camp.
- They lived in camps ranging from 60 to 200 people.
- The Khoikhoi didn't have permanent, trained and professional army but the energetic youth defended their society.
- The Khoikhoi used spears, arrows and bows made up of stone and bone material to defend their society.
- Power and authority were based on customs and traditions.
- The chiefs were assisted by elders who headed the clan in the camps or villages.
- The Khoikhoi also held political meetings in public and every member was free to attend such meetings.
- Conflicts or misunderstandings between members of different clans were solved by the chiefs of the same camp.

Economical organization

- The Khoikhoi were nomadic in nature just like the San.
- The Khoikhoi traded with the Bantu and Europeans at the coast and exchanged cattle, sheep and goats for European manufactured goods like liquor (wine) and tobacco from the Boers.
- They hunted wild animals and gathered fruits, caterpillar, butterflies, grasshoppers, white ants and honey to supplement their diet.
- The Khoikhoi raided their neighbours and survived on loot or booty which they got from their neighbors.
- They carried out fishing especially those who lived near water bodies e.g. River fish, R. Vaal, R. Orange.
- They also adopted iron working after the coming of the Bantu and started making strong tools like spears, arrows, panga etc.
- The Khoikhoi were mainly pastoralists hence the name herders i.e. they kept cattle, sheep and goats.
- The Khoikhoi trained oxen and use them for transport.
- Milk from cows was important for babies and women.

Social organization

- The Khoikhoi worshipped the high God who gave them rain and wealth.
- Their God was given a name Twisgab.
- God on earth was represented by a praying mantis.
- The praying mantis was a symbol of wealth and good fortune and was highly respected.
- After circumcision, a boy was free to marry and this occurred at a tender i.e. Boys of 15-16 years married girls of 11-13 years of age.
- The boy had to pay dowry to the girl's parents in form of animals e.g. cattle.

- After marriage, a boy had to go and leave with the girl's parents until the couple produced their first child.
- After birth, the groom and the bride could leave the parent's home and go to establish their own home.
- At this time, they would be given a lot of gifts like cattle, sheep and goats.
- The Khoikhoi lived in camps as their homes and lived in a better life compared to that of the San.
- The Khoikhoi also danced or rejoiced at the site of a new, half and full moon.
- They were polygamous and strictly exogamous i.e. married from outside their families or clans.
- The Khoikhoi practiced some ancestral worship and respected the graves of their departed ancestors.
- They offered sacrifices in form of animals to the small gods for rain and when celebrating important moments.
- The Khoikhoi celebrated important moments like birth, marriage and death.
- They believed in life after death. The dead joined the new life of spirits.

SIMILARITIES BETWEEN THE SAN AND THE KHOIKHOI

- Both had a common origin i.e. they migrated from East or Central Africa.
- Both are considered to be the earliest inhabitants of S. Africa.
- Both belonged to the Bushmanoid family.
- Both were light skinned or yellow brown skinned people.
- Both were short and had a click sound in their language.
- Both were peaceful unless provoked or when their hunting grounds were interfered with.
- Both danced at the sight of new, half and full moon.
- Both had local medicine or herbs when attacked by diseases.
- Both carried out hunting and dug pits to trap animals
- Both carried out fishing from the nearby Rivers like Fish, Vaal, Orange etc.
- Both gathered fruits, roots, insects to supplement their diet.
- Both had council meetings open to all male adults and women were not involved in decision making.
- In both, democracy was exercised as a result of the meetings held.
- In both, elders mobilized for security. the youth and energetic men defended the society.
- In both, marriage was conducted at a tender age.
- In both, the married couple stayed at the bride's parents until the birth of the first child.
- Both celebrated important moments e.g. birth, puberty, marriage and death.
- Both raided their neighbors for cattle.
- They both used arrows, bows and spears made from bone and stone material for hunting and defense.
- In both, a decentralized system of administration existed e.g. they had no kings.
- In both, land was owned communally.

- They were both nomadic in nature i.e. used to move from one place to another looking for new hunting grounds and grazing areas.
- Both were painters and artists i.e. they painted their caves.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN SAN AND KHOIKHOI

- They arrived in S.A at different times i.e. the San were first and Khoikhoi followed.
- The San practiced endogamous marriage while the Khoikhoi practiced exogamous marriage.
- The San had a narrow vocabulary while the Khoikhoi had a wider vocabulary.
- The San called their God Kaggen while the Khoikhoi called theirs Twisgab
- The San had loose political organization and could easily be defeated while the Khoikhoi had a better political organization.
- The San didn't keep domestic animals while the Khoikhoi mainly kept cattle, sheep and goats.
- The Khoikhoi used cattle to pay bride price while the San used dogs.
- They were referred to different names i.e. the San were called bushmen, Twa, Roa, hunters while the Khoikhoi were known as the Hottentots, herders.
- The San lived in caves while the Khoikhoi lived in camps
- Among the Khoikhoi, milk supplemented their diet but the San didn't have milk but supplemented their diet with caterpillars, butterflies etc.

THE KHOISAN

ORIGIN OF THE KHOISAN

What were the origins of the Khoisan peoples?

- They were part of the earliest inhabitants of South Africa.
- The Khoisan were a combination of the San and the Khoikhoi.
- They originated from the Bushmanoid race / Khoisan people.
- They have a yellow/brownish colour shori structure and a click sound in their language.
- They were closely related to the early man i.e. Australopithecus (Southern Ape)/hairly bodied.
- They were a combination of the San and Khoikhoi.
- The San were the first to arrive in South Africa around AD1000.
- They are variously referred to as the Roa, Twa, hunters, Bushmen.
- The Khoikhoi arrived shortly after the San i.e. around 1300AD.
- The Khoikhoi are also referred to as Herders, Hottentots, and men of men.
- However the origin of the Khoisan is not clear to the historians.
- But they are believed to have originated from either East or Central Africa.
- It is believed that by AD 1000, the Khoisan were living on Mainland of Tanganyika.
- It is from here that they moved Southwards, through Central Africa and finally settled in different areas of South Africa.
- This is proved by similar rock and cave paintings found in East, Central and South Africa.

- Once in South Africa, they first settled in the lands of Damaraland, Batlapin and later, spread to the provinces of Transkei, Cape, Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal, Griqualand West.
- While some went into the Swazi and Lesotho highlands. Others settled in the mountains of Winterburg, Drakensberg, Brankenstein etc.
- They also settled along rivers; Vaal, Orange, Kei Tugera, Fish, Umtata, Tsomo,. The arrival of more advanced groups like the Bantu and the Dutch pushed them into the deserts of Kalahari and Namib.
- Today, the survivors of these groups live in the countries of Namibia, Botswana, and Angola.

THE MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE KHOISAN

Describe the migration and settlement of the Khoisan

How did the Khoisan settle in S.A by 1800 A.D?

- The Khoisan were a combination of the Khoikhoi and the San
- Their origin is not clear
- They are said to have originated from Central or East Africa
- The Khoisan were the earliest inhabitants of S.A
- They belonged to the Bushmanoid family
- They were light skinned and spoke with a click sound
- The San were the first to move and they are said to have started their movement around 1000AD.
- They moved southwards and settled at Namaqualand.
- Others settled in Batlapin.
- Some settled in Griqualand west
- They also settled in Orange Free state, Transvaal and Transkei
- They occupied areas around R. Orange, R. Vaal, R. Fish etc.
- Some San occupied areas around Drakensburg, winter burg and Lesotho Mountains.
- By the 19th century, the San were living in present day Namib and Kalahari Desert.
- The Khoikhoi followed the san (second group)
- The Khoikhoi moved in three major groups but settled in four groups
- The first group was known as the Cochoqua, Nama, Gona, Korana.
- The Nama (Western Khoikhoi) moved Westwards along the Orange River and settled in Namibia.
- The Gona (Eastern Khoikhoi) followed the Eastern side into the Fish River Vally).
- The cochoquo (Cape Khoikhoi) moved into the coastal areas of the Cape.
- The Korana went into Griqualand West.
- They settled in the land between Atlantic coast and Buffalo coast.
- By the 15th Century, they were found living along Saldahan Bay, Table Bay, Vessel Bay and Massel Bay.
- Their East ward expansion and migration was checked by the Indian Ocean and the coming of the Europeans.

ORGANISATION OF THE KHOISAN

How were they organized by 1650?

- They were organized **politically, socially and economically** as shown below;

Political organization

- Politically, the Khoisan had a **decentralized government** with a weak political set up.
- The Khoisan leaders were not hereditary and at any occasion they would have a new head.
- To the San, the work of the government was done at the level of each settlement with the help of **headman** while to Khoikhoi it was the **chief**.
- The headman and the chief ruled according to acceptable norms and traditions of society.
- The San lived in numerous small isolated settlements.
- The smallest San had **25-70 people** and the largest between **200 and 500** people while the Khoikhoi lived in larger communities/camps/nations between **600-2000** people.
- Each settlement was practically independent of the other with its own leaders.
- The headman was assisted by a **council of elders** whose decisions he implemented without question.
- The headman also exercised full ritual powers i.e. he presided over initiation and maintained law and order.
- Council meetings were regularly held to handle important matters like disputes.
- **Clan democracy** existed among the Khoisan and membership to the council was open to all male adults.
- These groups were bound together by a common language and name which distinguished it from the rest.
- The Khoisan were friendly to other people unless provoked or attacked.
- Every group (band) had a responsibility of protecting their land against intrusion from other groups.
- Their women had no say in politics and were not respected in society.
- The Khoisan had no permanent or standing army and no military leaders. However, the youths were responsible for the defence and security of the society.

Social organization

- Socially, the family was the basic social unit where relatives lived.
- The Khoisan had weak family ties and never cared for the sick and old.
- Elders were highly respected among the Khoisan communities.
- Clan elders were, therefore a source of knowledge, wisdom, truth, and culture.
- The Khoisan had a **click sound** in their language.
- Members of the same group were related through marriage.
- Polygamous marriages were highly encouraged especially among elders, though monogamy also existed.
- Marrying many wives was for prestige and social harmony.
- The Khoisan encouraged early marriages.

- After marriage the man (groom or son-in-law) could join the family of his bride (wife) and hunt for them until the birth of their first child.
- By hunting and providing food for the in-laws, the boy was **paying bride price**.
- After having their first born, the couple could then be allowed to form their own home.
- The Khoisan women were so courageous and gave birth alone and cut the baby's umbilical cord with a sharp stick.
- The women produced very few children about 3 to 4 because of their hunting and wandering life.
- The Khoisan danced at the appearance of the new, half and full moon and after a good hunt.
- **Initiation ceremonies** were very important and serviced the cultural and adulthood roles where the san tested the hunting skills of their boys.
- Hunting also served as a **source of leisure** among the Khoisan.
- The Khoisan celebrated important stages in life like death, marriage, birth, and puberty.
- They drank fermented juice and honey during their social ceremonies.
- Later, they adopted a more settled life from the Bantu neighbours.
- They had a strong love for art and were **great painters** who recorded major events of their life through pictures that decorated walls of their caves and rocks.
- The Khoisan were also religious people and believed in life after death and supreme being.
- They worshipped a Supreme Being or god called **Kaggen/Huwe/Tuisgoab** who was believed to be the creator/father of our fathers/giver of wealth.
- Accordingly, prayers and sacrifices were offered to him for blessings and rain especially during the dry season.
- They treated the praying mantis with a lot of respect as a symbol of wealth and fortune.
- The mantis was thought to live in the sky with souls of the dead men.
- They wore ornaments of ostrich, egg shells, and feathers/animal skin, and leaves.
- Economically**
- The Khoisan carried out **pottery**.
- Land was a community property
- In fact, the Khoikhoi had a **pastoral economy** which was a source of wealth.
- The Khoisan's main source of wealth was from their hunting grounds.
- The Khoisan jealously protected their only hunting grounds against any intruders.
- They hunted small and big animals like chitters, zebra, squirrels, hyenas as well as birds like ostrich, vultures, etc.
- They used **poisonous arrows** and bows to hunt down small animals like squirrels.
- Large animals **were trapped in big pits**.
- **Europeans** obtained large quantities of cattle and sheep from the Khoikhoi.
- The Khoisan also obtained large quantities of iron tools from the Bantu.
- The Khoisan had no idea about iron working but made tools out of stones and sticks.
- They also carried out fishing especially those who lived near water bodies.

THE BANTU OF SOUTH AFRICA

- The Bantu formed the third and largest group of people who settled in S.A after the San and Khoikhoi.
- They were Bantu speaking people with a common suffix Ntu or Ndu when referring to people.
- They belonged to the Negroid or black race.
- They were widely spread throughout Africa i.e. they make 10% of the total population of S.A.
- They comprise of the last or third African group to enter S.A i.e. came after the Khoisan.
- Their origin is not clear.
- Probably, they originated from W. Africa or western Sudan areas or Niger Congo basin or Cameroon.
- Katanga region was their dispersal point or place before moving to S. Africa
- The actual date of arrival at Katanga is not clear.
- Probably, it was about 200 years ago.
- They moved south wards into S.A and arrived in S.A around 1000AD.
- They moved in four major groups e.g. the Shona-venda, Sotho-Tswana, Nguni-Tsonga, Ambo-Herero or Ovambo-Herero.

REASONS FOR MIGRATION OF THE BANTU INTO SOUTH AFRICA

- The reasons for the migration of the Bantu into S.A are not clear
- Perhaps, the Bantu migrated due to population pressure which led to pressure on land.
- Internal conflicts or civil wars in their homeland i.e. quarrel and power struggle forced the defeated group to leave the area.
- The exhaustion of soils in their cradle land forced the Bantu to look for new areas with fertile soils to carry out farming.
- External attacks from hostile neighbors within the Luo forced the Bantu to migrate to S.A
- The practice of shifting cultivation could have forced the Bantu to move.
- Natural calamities that hit their homeland e.g. floods, earthquakes, rain storm etc. caused disorder to the Bantu.
- Drought caused search for areas with reliable rainfall or extension of the Sahara desert forced the Bantu to migrate.
- The Bantu were looking for new areas with pasture and water for their animals.
- Famine and drought led to their migration to S.A as they were looking for food.
- The outbreak of diseases in their cradle land like sleeping sickness, Nagana, small pox and malaria forced the Bantu to migrate.
- The natural spirit of love for adventure forced them to move i.e. the Bantu wanted to discover new areas beyond their settlements
- The band wagon effect or peer pressure forced some Bantu to migrate to S.A
- The desire to trade with local people of S.A made the Bantu to migrate.
- Others might have moved due to harsh climatic conditions i.e. they were looking for good areas with good climate.

MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE BANTU

Describe the migration and settlement of the Bantu

- The Bantu are the people who spoke the same language with a common word “**NTU** or **NDU**” to mean people.
- The migration and settlement of the Bantu is not clear.
- They belonged to the Negroid race or Niger family or Black race.
- The Bantu form the largest and last African group to move and settle in South Africa after the San and the Khoikhoi.
- Their original home land is not clear to many people.
- However, they are said to have migrated from the Niger-Congo basin or Cameroon or West Africa.
- From West Africa, the Bantu moved to Central Africa or Congo near Katanga region.
- Their migration is believed to have taken place 2000 years ago, from Katanga region to South Africa.
- Katanga region became their point of dispersal from where different Bantu groups took different directions.
- Their migration was slow, gradual and spread for a long period.
- The Bantu moved in four groups and three main waves i.e. the Shona-Venda, Sotho-Tswana, Nguni-Tsonga and Ambo-Herero.

THE SHONA-VENTA

- They were the first group of the Bantu to move in South Africa.
- This group was a combination of the Shona and the Venda.
- In the 18th century, the Shona and Venda had crossed River Limpopo and settled in Limpopo valley.
- By the 19th century, they had entered Zimbabwe where they formed the Rwozi-Kalanga kingdom.
- They did not reach deep into South Africa but stopped in Zimbabwe.

THE SOTHO-TSWANA (Central Bantu)

- They were the second group of the Bantu to enter South Africa and they moved into the Central wave.
- They include tribes like the Sotho, Tswana, Basuto, Pedi, Rolong, Thlaping etc.
- They share a lot in common with other Bantu groups in the region e.g. a common suffix “Ntu or Ndu” in their language.
- They followed the Central route and by the 13th Century, they had arrived in South Africa.
- From Congo, they moved in the gap between L. Malawi and L. Tanganyika.
- They entered South Africa in mainly three independent groups i.e. the Northern Sotho, Southern Sotho and the Tswana (Botswana).
- The Northern Sotho occupied Transvaal and included; The Pedi and Lavends.
- In South Africa, they settled along Rivers like Orange and Vaal.
- They are said to have been furthered either by Mangope or Maralong.

- By the 18th Century, the Sotho had expanded to East and South as far as the Orange River and to the West.
- There was also a small group as the Tswana which spread to Lake Ngami.
- The Sotho settled in present day Lesotho.
- The Tswana settled in present day Botswana (Bechuana land)
- They expelled the Khoisan who originally occupied the area between Orange to Zambezi and Vaal.
- The Kalahari desert hindered their Westward expansion while the Drakensberg Mountains their Eastward expansion.
- By the 18th century, they had already settled in their present day settlement where they multiplied to give rise to various ethnic groups e.g. the Sotho, Tswana, Pedi, Hurutos, Rolong etc.

NGUNI-TSONGA (Eastern Bantu)

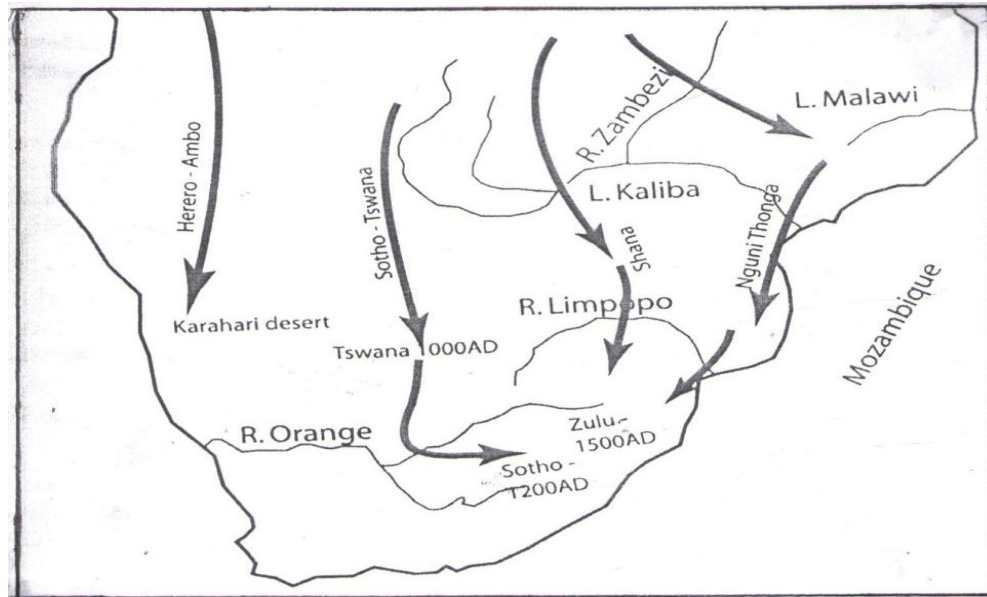
- They were the third group of people to enter South Africa and they used the Eastern wave.
- From their homeland (Katanga region), they move Southwards into South Africa.
- They left South to the Great Lakes region taking the Eastern route.
- By the 14th Century, they had reached Natal present Zulu land.
- By 1300 AD, the Xhosa a group of the Nguni had reached River Umzimvubu.
- The Xhosa later spread to the Umtata River and as far River Fish, Natal and Coast plains by the 16th Century.
- The Zulu/Mthethwa, Ndwandwe remained around Natal.
- By the 18th Century, the Nguni had formed different groups like the Xhosa, Thambu, Pondo, Zulu, Thethwa, Ngwane, Swazi etc.
- By 1815 (19th Century), the Swazi had been expelled Northwards into present day Swaziland due to land pressure.
- Their Eastward movement was checked by the Drakensberg Mountains but a few of the brave Nguni crossed it and settled in hilly areas of present Lesotho.
- The Tsonga occupied the North Eastern areas of Natal present day Mozambique in the Limpopo valley.
- Some of the Nguni scattered themselves Southwards into the hilly areas of the cape.
- Today, the Nguni occupy areas of Natal, Transvaal, Cape Province and Zulu land.

AMBO-HERERO (Western Bantu)

- The ambo-Herero were called the western Bantu because they lived in south west Africa present day Namibia.
- They left Congo Basin around the 16th Century.
- Their ancestors moved to South West from the areas of L. Tanganyika.
- By about the 16th Century, the Ambo-Herero had reached modern day Namibia .
- The Ambo moved into South Africa and settled in present day Amboland.
- However, a few Ambo went into Angola where they could carry out agriculture progressively.
- Some Ambo moved and settled in the Kalahari Desert.
- The Kalahari and Namib Desert cut off the Ambo and Herero from other Bantu.
- They mixed up with the Khoisan whom they came into contact with in the region.

- The deserts hindered their expansion Eastwards.

A SKETCH MAP OF SOUTHERN AFRICA SHOWING MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE BANTU IN AFRICA



ORGANISATION OF THE BANTU

- The Bantu were organized economically, socially and politically

Economic organization

- They were farmers and grew crops like sorghum, millet, pumpkins etc.
- They also kept animals like cattle, sheep and goats.
- The possession of these animals was a measure of one's wealth and status in society.
- These animals were used for paying bride price
- Fishing was also carried out by the Bantu who lived near water bodies e.g. R. Orange, R. River. R. Vaal.
- The Bantu carried out trade with their neighbors e.g. Khoisan and Europeans like the Dutch and Portuguese at Delgado Bay.
- Land was owned communally though clan leaders supervised its use and maintenance.
- Black smithing or iron smelting was carried out by the Bantu and made tools like hoes, spears, knives etc.
- They also carried out hunting to supplement on their diet and for trade.
- Like the Khoisan, the Bantu gathered food like honey, fruits etc.
- The Bantu also carried out cattle raiding on their neighbours.

Social organization

- The Bantu lived in permanent home steads.
- The family was the smallest social unit of the society
- The Bantu families were both nuclear and extended.
- The Bantu built grass thatched houses where they lived.

- Initiation ceremonies characterized their social life e.g. the Ngoni and Zulu carried out circumcision
- Members initiated together formed an age set or age regiment.
- The Bantu believed in spirits and ghosts since they acted as messengers of God.
- The Bantu respected the ancestral spirits and used to offer sacrifices to their small gods.
- They believed in life after death i.e. they knew that in case one died, he or she had to join the world of spirits.
- They also relied on magicians for purposes of healing and protecting themselves against evil spirits. The magicians included witch doctors, healers etc.
- They carried out exogamous marriages across clans
- The Bantu were mainly polygamous though monogamy also existed.
- Elders were highly respected and were seen as people close to God because of their age.
- The elders presided over cultural matters and played an important role in the social and political affairs.

Political organization

- The tribes or chiefdoms were the basic political units among the Bantu.
- The Bantu were highly centralized and had powerful chiefs who administered them.
- The power of the chief was based on the customs and norms of the society.
- The Bantu could overthrow their chiefs in case they abused the tribal values.
- The chief was the law giver and the chief judge.
- The chief was also the chief priest and communicated with the dead on behalf of their relatives.
- The chief always came from the central/royal family.
- The throne of the chief was hereditary i.e. at death of the chief, he was succeeded by the youngest son of his great wife.
- When the chief was young his older brother acted as a regent.
- The chief ruled with advice of senior members of the clan.
- The elders settled land disputes together with the senior clan members.
- Some elders controlled some cultural matters within the clan.
- The chief was assisted by the two councils i.e. the inner council and larger council.
- The inner council consisted of the chiefs' confidential advisers and close relatives.
- The council advised the chief on the daily problems in the tribe.
- In the matters of the great importance, the larger/wider assembly of junior or regional chiefs was called.
- During the wider assembly meetings, all adult males were allowed to attend.
- Democracy was always exercised at the council of meetings.
- The wider assembly met only at the annual fruits' ceremonies/harvest.
- The chief was the leader of judicial civil military and religious affairs.
- The Indunas were chosen from commoner families and acted as eyes and ears of the chief.
- The Bantu respected their chief as a symbol of unity and a center of loyalty.
- The Bantu had army which was to defend the tribe against external and internal enemies.

EFFECTS OF THE BANTU MIGRATION IN SOUTH AFRICA

- The effects were both negative and positive as shown below.
- The Bantu taught agriculture to the Khoisan who were pastoralists.
- The Bantu intermarried with the Khoisan e.g. the Tembo.
- The Bantu encouraged the Khoisan to live a settled life as a result of farming.
- The Bantu introduced the art of iron working to the Khoisan i.e. producing iron tools like panga, hand axes etc.
- Southern Bantu copied the culture/technique of using the oxen for transport agriculture and welfare.
- Bantu traded with the Khoisan.
- The Khoisan were detribalized because of interaction with the Bantu.
- The Khoisan also lost their culture and adopted that of the Bantu e.g. living a settled life.
- The Khoisan were displaced to the dry areas of Namib and Kalahari Desert.
- The Khoisan lost their lives during the wars of conquest by the Bantu.
- The Khoisan suffered misery and famine after the settlement of the Bantu.
- The Khoisan were defeated and conquered by the Bantu.
- The Khoisan lost their animals especially cattle to the Bantu through raids.
- The Bantu especially the Xhosa caused many wars i.e. Kaffir wars on the Eastern frontier.
- There was increased in population in some areas and this led to the shortage of land.

HOW THE BANTU MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT AFFECTED THE KHOISAN PEOPLE OR THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE BANTU AND THE KHOISAN

What effects did the Bantu settlement have on the peoples of South Africa?
How did the Bantu migration and settlement affect the Khoisan?
Describe the relationship between the Bantu and the Khoisan

- Khoisan is a collective word which refers to the two groups of people i.e. the Khoikhoi and San.
- The settlement of the Bantu in South Africa affected the early inhabitants (Khoikhoi and San) both positively and negatively as explained below;
- Their settlement led to increased population in South Africa since they came in big numbers.
- The Bantu lived side by side with the Khoisan and mixed freely with the Khoisan.
- Intermarriages took place between the Khoisan and the Bantu in all areas where they settled. This gave birth to the **Thembu** tribe.
- The Khoisan learnt the art of **iron smelting** from the Bantu. As a result, the Khoisan dropped their weaker weapons and tools made out of stones and bones and started producing iron tools like bows, spears, pangas, hoes and axes.
- The Bantu introduced new crops to the Khoisan like millet, yams, pumpkins, beans, sorghum and calabashes among others.
- The Khoisan later learnt agriculture from the Bantu. And because of agriculture, the Khoisan lived a more permanent or settled life.

- The Khoisan started carrying out trade with the Bantu. The Khoisan gave hunted meat, feathers as well as cattle and sheep products to the Bantu in exchange for millet and grains.
- The Bantu introduced a **centralized system of administration** to the Khoisan which strengthened their political organization.
- The Khoisan learnt weaving and curving from the Bantu.
- The Khoisan and the Bantu fought each other over land.
- The Khoisan were defeated in the wars over land by the Bantu. This was because the Bantu had better weapons of iron as compared to the Khoisan.
- The Khoisan lost their **independence** because they were conquered by the Bantu.
- The Khoikhoi leaders lost much of their political power to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan lost their lives as many of them were killed by the Bantu in the wars over land which led to depopulation.
- The Khoisan lost their hunting and fishing grounds to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan lost their grazing land to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan were displaced from their land. This was because the Bantu were farmers and therefore they needed more land for cultivation.
- The Khoisan suffered from famine which increased their suffering or misery.
- The Khoisan were pushed into unfavourable areas like deserts or drier areas of Namib and Kalahari where life became difficult for the Khoisan people. In these dry areas, food and wild game became scarce.
- The Khoisan lost their animals (livestock) to the Bantu through raids (attacks) and this made the Khoisan poorer.
- The Khoisan were made slaves for the Bantu and they depended on the Bantu for their survival. For example, they started hunting for the Bantu.
- The Khoisan were absorbed or assimilated by the Bantu who were stronger and more organized. They therefore lost their culture to the Bantu.
- The Bantu adopted some of the cultures of the Khoisan e.g. the Xhosa who were Bantu adopted the click sound of the Khoisan and they started speaking with a click sound like the Khoisan.
- The Khoisan lost their property to the Bantu.
- The Bantu (Xhosa) took the Khoisan women as their official wives which was an insult to the Khoisan.
- Therefore, the Bantu invasion created insecurity, thus destroying the political, social and economic organization of the Khoisan.

REASONS WHY THE BANTU SUCCEEDED OVER THE KHOISAN

- The Bantu were strongly well built and stronger in stature than the Khoisan hence their success.
- The Khoisan had a weak political organization i.e. they were mainly decentralized.
- The Khoisan never had permanent settlements compared to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan lived in small isolated settlement which made it easy for the Bantu to defeat them.
- The Bantu moved in big numbers for which the disunited Khoisan couldn't easily resist.

- The Bantu were better armed with iron weapons e.g. spears, arrows etc which the san didn't have.
- The Bantu carried out iron working in which they made strong tools like hoes, pangas etc. that enabled them to clear the forests and bushes.
- The Bantu had a strong advanced economy which depended on farming there by supplying enough food to their force.
- The Bantu traded with the whites at the coast (Delagoa Bay) which strengthened the economy.
- The Bantu had constant supply of food unlike the Khoisan who lived by gathering food.
- The Bantu had strong leaders unlike their counter parts the Khoisan.
- By the time the Bantu came the Khoisan had been weakened by diseases.
- The Bantu had strong leaders unlike their counter parts the Khoisan.

THE EUROPEAN INTEREST IN SOUTH AFRICA

THE DUTCH/ BOERS

- The Dutch were the first Europeans to settle in South Africa and this was in the 17th century.
- For much of the 16th century, the Dutch were part of the Spanish empire.
- However, in 1572 the Dutch won their Independence and they therefore decided to participate in the Indian and Atlantic trade which had been dominated by the Spanish and Portuguese.
- In order to effectively control to trade specially in spices, the Dutch merchants formed the Dutch East India Company (DEICO).
- It was this company which carried out the duty of discovering the sea route to India as well as promoting trade between the Far East and Holland.
- While the Dutch were on their way to the Far East, their ship Haarlem capsized/ got an accident in 1647 at Table Bay near the Cape of Good Hope and the survivors were able to swim up to the shores.
- The survivors stayed for a period of six months while repairing the ship.
- In the process, they discovered many good things about the Cape which influenced them to make a report back home.
- The government of Holland decided to establish a settlement at the Cape.
- On 6th 1652, the first group of Dutch settlers arrived at the Cape, sent by the Dutch East India Company on behalf of the Dutch government.
- The group was led by Jan Van Riebeck who arrived at the Cape with three ships to establish a Dutch settlement at the Cape.

REASONS FOR THE DUTCH COMING AND SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE IN 1652

- The Portuguese success in the Far East forced the Dutch to settle at the Cape. The Portuguese had successfully controlled the Indian Ocean trade and this influenced the Dutch to come and also carry out trade.
- The strategic location of the cape led to their settlement i.e. the Cape was mid-way between Europe and the Far East (Asia) which would act as a resting centre so as to break the long tiresome journey.
- The establishment of the Dutch East Indian company (DEICO) gave way for the Dutch to settle in South Africa i.e. sponsored the first Dutch settlers under Jan Van Riebeck.
- The Dutch wanted to use the Cape as a workshop for repairing broken ships as well as re refueling their ships.
- The Dutch wanted to set up a Fort (military base) so as to protect the Dutch sailors from other Europeans.
- The Cape had a good Mediterranean climate which favoured the growing of vegetables, fruits, animal rearing and human settlement.
- They wanted to get meat from the Khoikhoi who were cattle keepers so as to overcome the problem of food shortages while on their journeys.
- They wanted to establish a medical Centre or sick bay to treat the Dutch sailors and soldiers.
- The Cape had fertile soils which the Dutch farmers wanted for growing vegetables and fruits for the sailors.
- The Cape had good natural harbours like Table Bay which would enable the easy landing of ships for trade as well as for protection from their enemies.
- The need to collect taxes from incoming and out-going ships at the Cape made the Dutch to settle there.
- They wanted to revenge against Spain which had ruled or colonized them to 1572.
- The Cape had plenty of unoccupied land that the Dutch hoped to use for their economic activities as well as expanding their settlement.
- The hospitality of the local people especially the Khoikhoi also encouraged the Dutch to settle at the Cape.
- They wanted to take over control of trade in the Far East especially in spices. This would only be achieved if they controlled the Cape where most of the ships passed while going to the Far East.
- The Island of St. Helena that had for many years supplied the Dutch sailors with fresh fruits had by the 17th century ran short of such fruits and so the Cape would act as an alternative.
- They wanted to avoid the occupation of the Cape by the English merchants who were strongly competing with the Dutch.

- The accidental breakdown of the Haarlem ship in 1647 encouraged survivors to give good reports about the Cape to the Dutch government and this encouraged the Dutch to come and settle there.
- The courage of Jan Van Riebeck who led the first settlers in 1652 gave more courage to other Dutch to come and settle at the Cape.
- The Cape was also free from many dangerous tropical diseases like malaria.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE EARLY OR PIONEER DUTCH SETTLERS AT THE CAPE

- Jan Van Riebeck and other early Dutch settlers faced the following problems which were political, social and economic
- They faced a problem of homesickness because they were far away from their home country (Holland)
- They lacked the geographical knowledge and information of the area and hence they failed to succeed in agriculture at first.
- They faced a problem of tropical diseases like dysentery, malaria, sleeping sickness and smallpox at the Cape which attacked and killed many of them.
- They faced a problem of hostile tribes like the Bantu and Khoisan that always attacked them.
- They faced a problem of language barrier i.e. they could not speak African languages which made communication with the Africans difficult.
- They faced a problem of poor transport and communication network since there were no roads and railways at the Cape.
- The Dutch settlers faced a problem of shortage of women to act as their wives and this starved them sexually that led to homosexuality and mixed marriages with Africans.
- They faced a problem of food shortage since the Khoikhoi had migrated from the Cape into the interior yet they were the ones to supply the Dutch with food and meat.
- The Dutch settlers lacked enough labour to carry out cultivation since they came in small numbers and yet the Africans were not ready to work for them.
- They faced a problem of poor housing (shelter) facilities because they had constructed wooden structures which normally leaked during the rainy season.
- They lacked enough funds to effectively administer the Cape colony. This was because the government of Holland did not support the settlers but left everything to the DEICO.
- They faced a problem of unfavourable weather conditions. For example, the Cape experienced serious drought and famine which killed many Dutch settlers.
- They faced a problem of lack of education for their children since there were no educational facilities at the Cape thus keeping their children in a state of ignorance..

- They faced a problem of shortage of essential supplies like medicine, clothes etc. since their home was far away from South Africa.
- They also faced attacks from wild animals at the Cape like lions, leopards, elephants etc.
- They faced a problem of being isolated by the local people at the Cape (Africans) who saw them as devils and sea monsters.
- They faced a problem of limited market for their produce since they sold only to the company at low prices which left them poor.
- They lacked agricultural skills and experiences since Most of them were former soldiers with no agriculture skills, hence failing in agriculture.
- They also faced a problem of corruption by the Dutch governors and other company officials at the Cape led to the misuse of the company's funds.
- The Dutch settlers also faced a problem of bad or harsh company rules for example; the company charged the settlers high rents for using land.
- The Dutch settlers were also prohibited by the company from growing profitable crops such as wheat, cotton and tobacco thus leaving them poor.

SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS FACED

- Jan Van Riebeck expanded the settlement by bringing more land under cultivation. This increased agricultural production and therefore solved the problem of food shortage.
- The problem of food shortage was also solved by encouraging the Dutch settlers to raid the Bantu farms in order to get cattle and food.
- Economic restrictions were relaxed by the company. For example, the Dutch settlers were allowed to sell their produce to the passing ships or other companies other than the DEICO alone thus increasing their incomes.
- Slaves were imported from Java (Indonesia) and Madagascar to solve the problem of labour shortage.
- The Dutch settlers were also later encouraged to enslave the Africans who provided labour on their farms.
- The Dutch solved the problem of shortage of women by importing orphan girls from Holland who became their wives.
- Mixed marriages were also encouraged between the Dutch settlers and the Africans (Khoikhoi) to reduce the problem of lack of wives.
- The problem of education was solved by the Dutch reformed Church which set up elementary schools to provide education to the Dutch children.
- A large hospital was built in 1707 which provided medical care to the Dutch settlers at the Cape.

- A large water reservoir was built to provide water in the dry season so as to solve the problem of water shortage.
- The company gave free land to the Dutch settlers where they would cultivate to get enough food, thus improving their health.
- Corruption was solved by dismissing the corrupt governors like William Van Derstel who was dismissed from the company services in 1707 because of his corrupt practices.
- Agricultural practices were strictly increased from 1658 to increase the farmer's incomes and revenue from farming.
- The problem of insecurity was solved by putting in place a local militia (army) whereby every man between 16 and 60 years had to join this army and by 1768, this force had 500 soldiers. This army protected the Dutch settlers against African attacks.
- The Dutch also built a large defense castle (walls) to protect the Dutch settlers against the African attacks.
- The company imported experienced French farmers known as **Huguenots** to teach better farming methods to the Dutch settlers at the Cape.

HOW THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT WAS ESTABLISHED AND EXPANDED AT THE CAPE

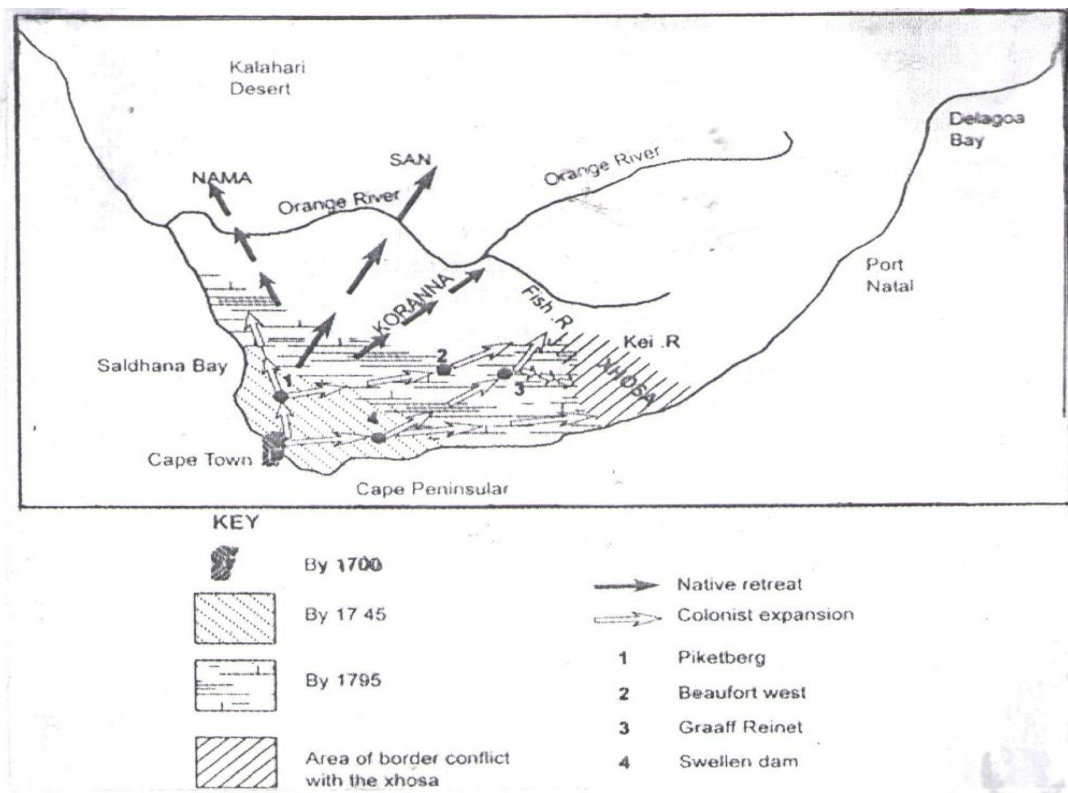
How did the Dutch establish themselves at the Cape in 1652?

How did the Dutch establish their settlement at the Cape?

- The Dutch settlement began with the accidental breakdown of the Dutch Haarlem ship in 1647 at Table Bay presently Cape Town.
- The survivors discovered many interesting things about the cape of South Africa.
- When they returned to Holland, they gave a good report about the Cape to the DEICO which thought of establishing of a colony at the Cape
- In 1652, the company sent Jan Van Riebeck with instructions to establish a Dutch settlement at the Cape.
- Jan Van Riebeck arrived on 6th April 1652 with three ships and about 130 people.
- Jan Vab Riebeck set up a wooden structure or house to act as the headquarters and also constructed a sick bay or temporary hospital to treat the sailors and soldiers.
- Riebeck's group also established vegetable and fruit gardens to supply food to the sailors and soldiers.
- In 1657, nine soldiers were released and discharged by the DEICO from company services to start establishing a colony.
- Each soldier was given 13 ½ hectares of land near the valley of River Leisbeck.
- The nine men were allowed to open up their own farms but they were to sell their produce to the company.

- The nine soldiers were not to pay taxes for a period of 12 years to allow them carryout their activities smoothly.
- By 1662, the Dutch colony was still small having about 120 families producing agricultural output to sell to the company.
- In 1668, the population of the whites at the Cape increased when the DEICO imported 200 French Protestants known as Huguenots who taught the Dutch better farming methods.
- By 1672, the number of the Dutch farmers had gradually increased leading to the expansion of the colony.
- From 1685, some farmers started moving away from the Cape due to the harsh company rules and established new settlements or homes like Stellen Bosch and De'pearl.
- By 1700, the number of the colonialists (settlers) at the Cape had increased to about 1300 people.
- By 1707, the Dutch farmers had set up commando units to protect themselves against the African attacks.
- By 1795, the Dutch settlement (colony) had expanded North east and East wards up to the Great Fish River with districts like Stellen Bosch, Swellen dam, Graaf Reinet and the Cape.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE DUTCH EXPANSION OF THE CAPE TOWARDS THE FISH RIVER



REASONS FOR THE DUTCH EXPANSION OF THE COLONY UPTO THE FISH RIVER

Why did the Dutch expand their colony or settlement up to the Fish River?

- The expansion of the colony was unplanned for and it was the work of only the settlers without the company's help.
- The factors that forced the Dutch to expand the cape colony were geographical, economic and administrative.
- There was plenty of unoccupied land in the interior which encouraged the Boers to expand.
- The soils at the cape were becoming poor or exhausted and this forced the Dutch to look for areas with fertile soils and good climate.
- The Dutch were naturally pastoralists or nomads and always moved looking for water and pasture for their animals leading to the expansion of their colony.
- The Dutch were running away from the harsh laws of DEICO
- The company gave farmers low prices of their goods and never allowed them to grow profitable crops e.g. tobacco and this forced them to expand.
- The company imposed harsh land tenure system which made farmer's relatives to lose land on death of the family heads.
- Most farmers had become bankrupt and wanted to try their luck elsewhere.
- The company's failure to discourage farmers from moving away led to the expansion of the Dutch colony.
- The increase population at the cape made farming difficult hence the Dutch decided to move away leading to expansion of their colony.
- The love for adventure also led to the Dutch expansion of their colony i.e. the settlers or Dutch wanted to know new areas beyond the cape.
- The Dutch settlers never wanted to be forced in the military service and they decided to move away.
- The search for wealth and mineral prospects in the interior led to the Dutch expansion of their colony.
- The company took 10% of the settlers' cattle as fee of grazing rights over land that the company never bought hence forcing the Dutch to expand up to Fish River.

EFFECTS OF THE DUTCH EXPANSION

- The Boer expansion led to the loss of African independence in the interior.
- African women were raped as a result of the Dutch expansion of their colony (led to intermarriages between Dutch and Africans).
- As a result of intermarriages, there was birth of the coloured people.
- The Boers enslaved the Africans.
- Africans lost the culture and adopted the bad European habits like smoking.
- Many people died as a result of white man's liquor and also as a result of wars.
- The expansion worsened the relationship between the Africans and the Boers.
- Africans lost their property as a result of kaffir wars e.g. houses, crops etc.
- Most Africans lost their land to the Boers.
- Africans were also displaced as a result of the Dutch expansion of the colony.

- The expansion caused raids and counter raids for cattle, food etc.
- The Dutch introduced Christianity in the interior as a result of the Dutch Reformed church (the first church DRC).
- The expansion also detribalized the Africans ie Africans lost their tribal identity.
- The Boers established schools, hospitals etc. in the interior of S.A
- Africans became poor and started depending on the whites.
- The Dutch expansion of their colony led to spread of diseases like STDs.
- Racial discrimination was spread to Africans in the interior by the Boers and this gave birth to the policy of apartheid.
- Africans developed inferiority complex.
- New crops were introduced e.g. wheat, tobacco, barley

THE DUTCH ADMINISTRATION AT THE CAPE 1652-1795

Explain how the DEICO administered the Cape up to 1795

How was the Dutch colony at the Cape administered by 1795?

- The Cape colony was under the rule of the DEICO which operated in South Africa and the Far East.
- The company was headed by a Committee of 17 Directors called the ‘‘Council of the 17’’.
- These had their headquarters in Amsterdam in Netherlands (Holland).
- The Directors were responsible for planning, monitoring and financing the company’s businesses abroad. They also appointed and dismissed workers.
- Due to the distance between Holland and the Cape, the company directors appointed a governor-General to be in charge of the Cape colony.
- The Governor-General therefore was the head of the administration (Executives) and he had all the powers in the 17 directors of the DEICO who were based in Holland.
- There were several Governor-Generals who governed the Cape colony at different times for example Jan Van Riebeck, William Van Derstel and Simon Van Derstel.
- Jan Van Riebeck was the first Governor-General and he governed the Cape in the interests of the 17 directors of the DEICO.
- The DEICO set up four organs to assist the governor-General in the administration of the Cape colony. These were the Councils of policy, justice, security and the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC).
- The Council of policy was headed by the Governor-General. It was made up of 7 senior company officials who assisted the Governor-General in administration.
- The seven officials were responsible for the wellbeing of all people in the colony i.e. from the lowest or slaves up to the wealthiest settlers
- The Council of policy was also responsible for making laws for the Dutch settlers. It therefore acted as the Legislative body or parliament of the colony.

- The Dutch settlers were however not represented in this Legislative body and therefore the DEICO officials neglected the demands and interests of the settlers.
- Below the Council of policy was the Council of Justice. This Council acted as the main court of appeal.
- It controlled other courts and maintained law and order in the colony. It was therefore responsible for the administration of justice in the Cape colony.
- The Council of justice had powers to approve all forms of punishments at the Cape.
- It sat in the Cape Town and the members were appointed by the Council of policy and therefore were answerable to it.
- Each district however, had a magistrate court which was responsible for setting minor cases at the district level.
- The minor courts however, had untrained officials who used outdated laws that only served the interests of the company.
- The magistrates were not independent and were ignorant about the legal procedures and sometimes never knew the laws that were broken.
- There were also matrimonial courts which were responsible for advising the young Dutch couples intending to get married.
- The Council of justice had to defend the interests of the company at all costs.
- There was also the Council of security or defence or militia which was responsible for defending the Cape from foreign attacks especially from the Bantu.
- Its head was appointed by the Council of policy to ensure the security of the Cape colony.
- The Council of defence concentrated on the Coast and therefore it failed to defend the interior settlers against the Bantu which resulted into 1795 revolt at Graaf Reinet.
- The Dutch settlers also formed special local defence units called Boer commando units or Burgher militia to protect themselves from African attacks.
- The fourth organ was the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC).
- This church controlled the cultural and political life of the Dutch settlers at the Cape and therefore all the Dutch settlers were supposed to be members of this Church.
- The Dutch Reformed Church performed ceremonies like baptism and confirmation of the Dutch settlers which was usually done in the districts of Swellendam and Graaf Reinet.

THE COLLAPSE OR DECLINE OF THE DEICO

Why did the Dutch rule come to an end by 1795?

Explain the factors that led to the decline of DEICO

- The company rule came to an end as a result of a number of factors as shown below
- The company had become bankrupt financially and was unable to run its affairs.
- The company had an alarming debt burden of about 10 million pounds leading to its collapse.

- The company had even failed to pay its workers and other stake holders hence the collapse of the DEICO.
- The company officials were corrupt and led to the mismanagement of financial resources hence the collapse of the company.
- The company had weak administrators like Simon Derstel and William Derstel failed to utilize the trade and other resources well leading to its collapse.
- The company officials failed to establish good relationship between the Africans and the settlers which caused unpopularity hence decline.
- The Dutch were few in number and could not easily defend their company which led to its collapse.
- The company officials imposed unfair taxes on the Dutch farmers which led to internal rebellions e.g. in Graaf Reinet hence decline.
- The Kaffir wars led to loss of lives and land by the Dutch and this disrupted trade which led to the decline of the company.
- The colony was too big to be effectively administered by the few Dutch officials there by making the collapse of the company inevitable.
- The Dutch also lacked enough personnel to administer both Holland and the cape thus the collapse of the company.
- Technological development in London led to the making of faster ships better than those of DEICO hence out competing the Dutch.
- The diversion of financial resources from trade to administration of a very big colony became costly leading to the collapse of the company.
- The company suffered from stiff competition especially from French and British companies leading to a stable decline of the company.
- The French Napoleonic wars in Europe during the 18th century also led to decline of the company's rule at the cape because the wars made the waters insecure hence disrupting trade.
- The transfer of commercial Centre from Amsterdam to London was a big commercial loss to the Dutch hence trade was controlled in London and the Dutch lost profits leading to the decline of DEICO.
- The French invasion of Holland in 1793 gave the British an excuse to take over the cape from the Dutch hence decline.
- The request of King Williams V of Netherlands to the British to take over the cape ended the company's rule in South Africa.
- The British occupation of the cape in 1795 finally ended the Dutch rule at the cape.

JAN VAN RIEBECK

Describe the role played by Jan Van Riebeck in the establishment of the Dutch colony at the cape.

- Riebeck was born on 21st April 1619 in Culemburg in Holland.
- He was the son of Anthusias Van Riebeck a medical doctor.
- Riebeck qualified as a Physician and later took charge of the company trading post at Tongkins (Vietnam).
- He was a hardworking and enterprising man.

- The Dutch Haarlem ship wreckage gave him an opportunity to start a home of the Dutch at the cape.
- On 6th April 1652, he arrived at Table Bay using three ships e.g. Reisger, Drommendaris and Goedehwap with about 130 people.
- He therefore pioneered the Dutch settlement at Table Bay in South Africa.
- He led the first official European settlement at Table Bay i.e. DEICO group.
- He established a home or calling station for the Dutch settlers in South Africa on instruction of the Company directors.
- He implemented the instructions given to him by the directors of the DEICO.
- He constructed a temporary hospital and vegetable gardens at Table Bay for the Dutch settlers.
- He endured initial problems at the cape and regarded himself as an engineer, digger, carpenter etc.
- He put in place a fort/Garrison at the Cape of Good Hope which had a castle. The fort accommodated 70 soldiers by 1662.
- He was appointed as the commander of the expedition.
- He also became the first governor of the Dutch colony at the cape.
- He protected the Dutch settlers against the Khoikhoi in South Africa.
- He established a trading section at the cape.
- He set up a food growing center at the cape for the Dutch settlers i.e. grew vegetables, fruits etc.
- He gave colonists about thirteen and a half (13½) in the Liesbeck valley.
- He recommended the expansion of the cape colony and brought more land under the company control.
- He imported and encouraged slave labour from Java, Madagascar and West Africa.

EFFECTS OF THE DUTCH AT THE CAPE

- It led to the displacement of the Africans to deserts like Kalahari.
- Africans lost their cattle to the Dutch especially the Khoikhoi and Bantu.
- Many Africans lost their land to the Dutch settlers.
- The Dutch settlement at the cape led to loss of African independence.
- The Dutch led to the outbreak of conflicts with Africans i.e. the kaffir wars on the Eastern frontiers.
- Many Africans lost their lives as a result of wars.
- There was great depopulation in the region due to loss of lives due to wars.
- The Dutch spread their diseases to the Africans like Sexually transmitted diseases.
- The Dutch intermarried with the Africans especially the Khoi khoi and gave birth to the coloured people.
- Africans lost their customs and culture and adopted European culture e.g. way of dressing, religion etc.
- Africans were enslaved on Dutch farms without payment (forced labour)
- The Dutch led to the loss of African property like land and cattle especially during the kaffir wars.
- Africans copied bad European habits like smoking, prostitution etc.
- Africans became very poor and started begging from the whites in order to survive.
- Africans traded with the Dutch getting things like beads, tobacco etc.

- The occupation of the cape by the Dutch attracted other Europeans to S.A e.g. the British and the French
- The Dutch led to the establishment of schools and hospitals in S.A e.g. Jan Van Reibeck who built a temporary hospital at the cape.
- The Dutch introduced the DRC at the cape which spread Christianity thus undermining African Traditional Religion.

THE KAFFIR WARS ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER BETWEEN THE DUTCH AND THE BANTU (XHOSA) 1770-1879

- The word kaffir was used by the Boers to insult and lower African status.
- The kaffir wars were fought between the Bantu (Xhosa) and the Boers and later the British who in most cases served on the side of the Boers.
- The kaffir wars were also known as wars of dispossession.
- They were fought on the Eastern frontier near the Fish River.
- They were many wars i.e. nine(9) wars and occurred at different times.
- The first war occurred in 1770s and the last one around 1879.
- The Bantu (xhosa) were led by many chiefs like Rarabe, Tyali, Makanda, Gaika, Mocomo, Ndhlabi, Mlanjeni etc.
- The Boers were led by Retief and Maynier while the British leaders were Benjamin, Durban, Harry smith, Colonel Graham.
- The most memorable kaffir war was the Mhlanjen uprising of 1834-1835 (the sixth kaffir war)

CAUSES OF KAFFIR WARS

What were the causes of the conflicts between the Xhosa and the Whites on the Eastern frontier?

Why did the Xhosa and the Boers conflict between 1870 and 1879?

- The Xhosa wanted to protect or preserve their independence leading to kaffir wars.
- The expansion of the coast caused the wars i.e. the Xhosa were expanding South and Westwards while the Boers North and Eastwards. They both met at Fish River where they fought from.
- The struggle for fertile land for farming by the two groups led to the kaffir wars since their previous land had lost fertility.
- The different attitudes over land ownership i.e. the Xhosa favoured communal ownership of land yet the Boers wanted private or individual ownership which led to wars.
- Raiding and counter raiding for cattle and food also caused the kaffir wars.
- The Xhosa and Boers also fought over cattle ownership i.e. each group wanted more cattle.
- Both the Boers and the Xhosa fought to prevent or end constant raids made by each other for cattle hence increasing the kaffir wars.
- The Boers lived in isolated areas which gave an opportunity to the Xhosa to raid them hence the wars.

- The Xhosa hated the spread of Christianity that undermined African culture in their region leading to the kaffir wars.
- The enslavement coupled with mistreatment imposed by the Boers on the Xhosa annoyed them hence the kaffir wars.
- The Boers gave the Xhosa low wages and at times were not paid and this made them to fight the Boers leading to the outbreak of wars.
- The increasing population of both the Boers and Xhosa limited land for farming and settlement leading to the wars.
- Drought and famine also caused the kaffir wars as the two groups attacked each other in order to get food and cattle for survival.
- The Boers never respected African traditional rulers which annoyed the Africans hence the kaffir wars
- The raping/ grabbing of Xhosa women by the Boers annoyed the Xhosa hence the Kaffir wars.
- Lack of clear boundaries i.e. the Boers never fenced their land which forced the Bantu to claim for this land hence the Kaffir wars.
- The long term hatred and enmity between the Boers and Xhosa created a vacuum for the outbreak of the Kaffir wars.
- The stealing of an axe i.e. a relative of the Xhosa chief was arrested for stealing an axe in 1846 which led to Kaffir wars as the Xhosa tried to rescue their fellow.
- The role played by African leaders/prophesies i.e. Mhlanjeni claimed that the Boer bullets could be turned into water and therefore the Xhosa joined the war in big numbers
- The disunity among African leaders like Makanda against Gaika caused the Kaffir wars.
- The rise of British imperialism led to the outbreak of the Kaffir wars.
- The racial discrimination between the Boers and Xhosa i.e. the Boers discriminated the Xhosa regarding their race as a God given one and superior over the black race hence wars.

THE COURSE OF THE KAFFIR WARS

Explain the course of the kaffir wars.

The first kaffir war 1779 – 1781

- It broke out in 1779 and ended in 1781.
- The Xhosa crossed the Fish River and landed into the Boer land.
- They later raided the Boer food, cattle among others
- The Boers responded by organizing their commando units and attacked the Xhosa.
- The first Kaffir war ended with the Boer victory.

The 2nd kaffir war 1789 - 1793

- The war broke out in 1789 and ended in 1793
- The Xhosa crossed the Fish River again and raided the Boers.
- The Boers wanted to attack the Xhosa but they were stopped by their magistrate. Honorabius Mynier which annoyed them.
- Later, a drought broke out in 1792/3 and the Boers became so desperate.
- The Boers decided to fight the Xhosa but were seriously defeated.

- The Boers became so furious and forced their magistrate to resign since at first he had stopped them from attacking the Xhosa.
- This was later followed by the British occupation of the cape in 1795.

The 3rd kaffir war 1779 – 1803

- It broke out in 1779 and ended in 1803
- The Boers revolted against the British government for failing to give them assistance against the Africans probably the Xhosa.
- The Xhosa took it as an advantage and raided the Boers again since the Boers were disorganized because of the revolt.
- The British government at the cape later joined hands with the Boers and they managed to defeat the Xhosa.

The 4th kaffir war 1812

- This war broke out in 1812.
- The British government of the cape decided to remove the **Gunukwebes** and **Nghalambi** from the land between Fish River and Keiskama.
- This resulted into a war between the Xhosa and the British.
- The war ended with the British victory.
- This land which was secured by the British was later given to the British settlers.

The 5th kaffir war 1818

- The war was fought in 1818.
- This war broke out following the British act of making **Gaika** to be the paramount chief of the Xhosa people. This annoyed Makanda so much.
- Gaika was forced to run to the British government of the cape for military assistance.
- Makanda then attacked the British in the same period so as to break them from giving assistance to Gaika.
- The British managed to defeat Makanda. He was arrested and finally taken to Robben Island prison.
- Makanda later drowned in the sea as he was trying to escape from the prison.

The 6th kaffir war 1834 – 1835

- It broke out in 1834 and ended in 1835.
- It was the most disastrous kaffir wars since very many people lost their lives.
- It broke out following the outbreak of famine, cattle raids among others.
- The Boers fought and defeated the Xhosa.
- The Xhosa were also displaced by the whites.
- The former Xhosa land was renamed Queen Adelaide province.
- It was later awarded to the Boers and this left very many Africans landless.
- Dr. John Phillip a missionary later intervened in the affair and convinced the British government to have sympathy for the landless Xhosa who were suffering.
- The British government was forced to occupy Queen Adelaide province but this annoyed the Boers.
- The Boers responded by moving into the interior of South Africa (Great Trek)
- The land was later given to the Xhosa.

The 7th kaffir war 1846-1847

- The war broke out in 1846 and ended in 1847
- It was also known as the war of Axe.
- This was mainly between the Xhosa against the British.

- It broke out when a relative to one of the Xhosa chiefs stole an axe from one of the Cape stores.
- He was later arrested by the British police force.
- The police men were later attacked by a group of Xhosa warriors which sparked off anger from the British authority hence prepared the ground for a war.
- The British government ordered the Xhosa to handover the suspect within a specified period of time.
- The failure of the Xhosa to respect the British orders later resulted into a war.
- The British later fought and defeated the Xhosa.

The 8th kaffir war 1850 – 1856

- This was fought between 1850 and 1856
- This war broke out due to the inspirational leadership provided to the Xhosa by their prophets like Mlanjeni.
- These prophets convinced the Xhosa to destroy all their cattle, grain etc. so as to gather strength from their small gods and defeat the whites.
- The Xhosa were defeated though they did what their prophets told them to do.
- They were again attacked by famine since they had destroyed their food, cattle etc.
- This war ended with the victory of the whites.

The 9th kaffir war 1877 – 1879

- It was the last kaffir war.
- This war was fought between 1877 and 1879.
- The British followed the Xhosa up to the Pondo land.
- This was followed by the reports that the Xhosa were mistreating the Pondo in their own land.
- The British were forced to occupy Pondo land so as to completely weaken the Xhosa.
- This marked the end of all Kaffir wars.

EFFECTS OF THE KAFFIR WARS

What were the Effects of the Kaffir wars?

- The Bantu (Xhosa) were defeated because they had inferior weapons compared to the guns the whites used.
- Africans lost their independence to the Boers because they were defeated
- There was loss of lives i.e. over 20,000 people died.
- The Kaffir wars depopulated the Africans as a result of the loss of lives.
- The wars led to misery and suffering especially of the Xhosa.
- The wars led to displacement of many people like the Xhosa and Boers who were moving to safer areas.
- The wars led to destruction of property of both the Boers and Xhosa like farmlands (crops), settlements among others.
- Africans became very poor than ever before because they lost a lot of property especially cattle and land.
- The wars weakened the African economic set up which forced the Africans to start begging from the whites.
- Traditional leaders lost their political powers and authority to the Boers.
- The wars made Africans lose trust in their traditional leaders, belief and culture.

- The wars increased the white man's settlement in South Africa especially in the interior.
- The wars increased hatred and enmity between the Africans and the Whites (Boers).
- The wars led to the decline of trade hence weakening the economy of the Africans.
- Africans lost their land to the whites.
- Many Africans were converted into Christianity because they lost trust in their traditional beliefs.
- The wars led to famine because of the destruction of crops.
- Africans lost their identity/ dignity as a result of the wars.
- The political, social and economic set up of the Africans was completely destroyed.
- The wars led to the birth of the Coloureds as a result of intermarriages between Africans and the whites.
- After the wars, the few Xhosa who had survived lived in constant fear of the Boers and developed an inferiority complex.
- The war led to British imperialism in South Africa.
- The 6th Kaffir war of **1834-35** led to the Great trek i.e. the movement of the Boers from the Cape into the interior of South Africa.
- The Province of Queen Adelaide was returned to the Xhosa by the British.
- The Boer districts of Swellendam and Graaf Reinet revolted and declared their independence.

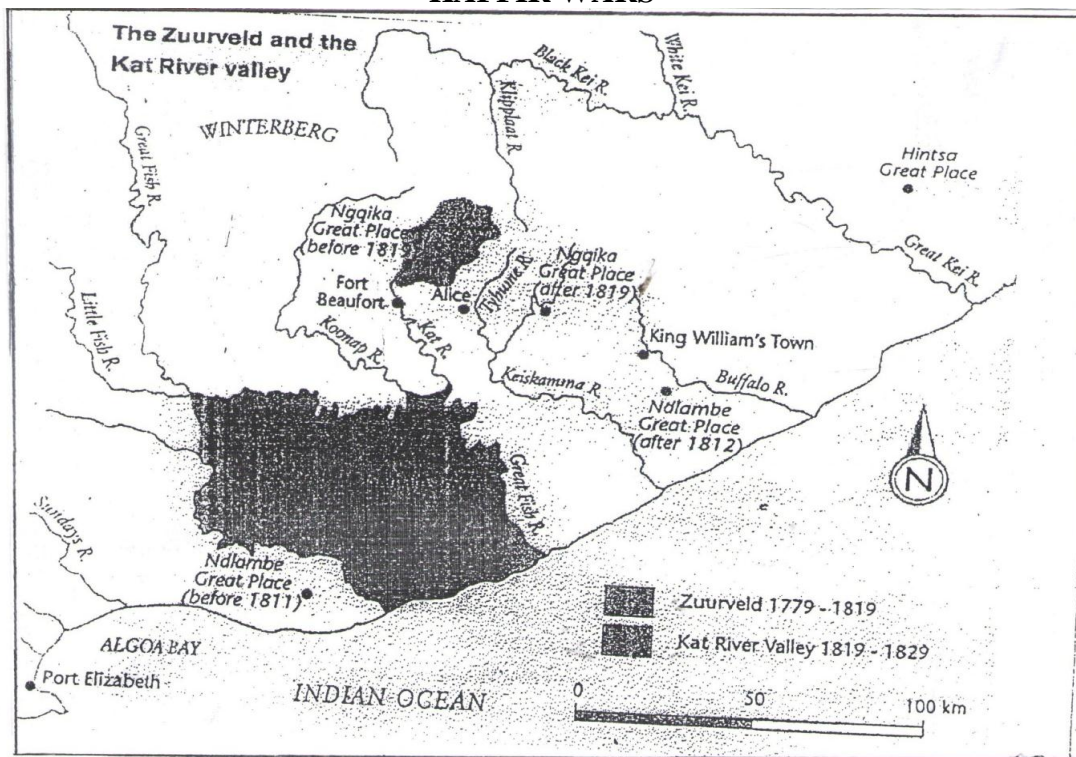
STEPS TAKEN BY THE BRITISH TO END THE KAFFIR WARS

What steps were taken by the British to end the Kaffir wars?

- The Kaffir wars threatened the Eastern frontier security for many years.
- Even the Boers constantly complained of the many Xhosa attacks.
- The British were also blamed for failing to stop the wars.
- As a result, politically and militarily, British officers started intervening into wars.
- The political officers included the colonial secretary Lord Glenelg, governors like Durban, Somerset, Bourke, Grey.
- The military officers include Gradocks, Colonel Graham and Captain Harry Smith.
- The British first tried peaceful means to end the Kaffir wars.
- They set up military forts and soldiers between the fighters to act as a barrier for example; they established forts in the town of Grahams, Beaufort, Hare, Peddie.
- Commander Gradocks was posted to the eastern frontier to bring peace.
- The British tried to convince the fighters to stop the wars like they convinced Gaika the Xhosa chief to control his people.
- They also convinced the fighters to return the stolen cattle like they convinced Gaika to return the cows stolen from the Boers.
- Later, however, all these peaceful efforts failed and therefore they resorted to force.
- The British fixed the fish river as a permanent boundary between the fighters.
- The aim was to create a corridor/empty/neutral land that would enforce peace between the two enemies (no man's land).
- In the process, over 20,000 Xhosa were evicted from their land.
- In this land, a new district was created away from the Cape and it was called Albany.
- The white settlers were encouraged into the new district of Albany.

- The British tried the divide and conquer method to end the Kaffir wars.
- The British also allied with Gaika against the other Xhosa chiefs.
- The British also arrested and imprisoned stubborn Xhosa fighters like Makanda.
- The creation of Albany district did not bring peace and therefore British pushed the Xhosa beyond River Keiskama.
- To reduce on African anger and hunger, food was given to them during famine.
- This new measure however caused more land problems for the Xhosa and this led to the 1834-35 Kaffir war.
- The British tried to force the signing of peace treaties between the enemies.
- The British even tried using missionaries to calm the Africans.
- Lord Glenely, the Colonial Minister returned the Xhosa land to bring peace.
- The Xhosa were advised to remain loyal to the British laws. The Xhosa were to become British citizens.
- The Xhosa were to give up all their weapons in order to create peace.
- The British even set up a new province called the British Kaffraria to end the seventh Kaffir war.
- The British magistrates, police, were posted to the Kaffraria.
- The British encouraged their administrators not to interfere into tribal affairs.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING STEPS TAKEN BY THE BRITISH TO SOLVE KAFFIR WARS



THE BRITISH OCCUPATION OF THE CAPE

- The British were the second Europeans to settle at the Cape of South Africa after the Dutch.
- They came from Britain/ England.
- Their occupation came twice, first in 1795 to 1802 and this was followed by the second occupation in 1806 after the collapse of the Dutch Batavian Government.

REASONS FOR THEIR COMING

Why were the British interested in the Cape colony between 1795 and 1806?

- The formation of the English India company in 1600 (17th Century) cleared way for the occupation of the Cape.
- British desire to control the Indian profitable trade and its items e.g. opium, silver, spices etc. which were highly demanded in European markets led to them to occupy the cape.
- They had a desire to create and protect a large commercial empire with the far-East e.g. India, China, Middle East through the Cape.
- They wanted to protect the sea route to India through the cape (her commercial passage) hence occupying the cape.
- The British wanted to overcome fierce commercial competition from other Europeans e.g. to cut off Spain, Portugal and the Dutch from monopolizing this trade.
- The deep natural harbours at the cape for easy anchoring of British merchant ships forced them to occupy the cape.
- They wanted to establish a calling station /resting place/refreshing point since the Cape was half way the journey between Asia and Europe.
- They fertile soils at the cape that favoured the growing of crops forced the British to settle at the cape.
- The strategic location of the cape i.e. half-way between India and Europe forced the British to occupy the cape.
- The favourable climatic conditions at the cape i.e. the Mediterranean type favoured European settlement.
- The industrial revolution in England created the demand for raw materials from South Africa thus forcing the British to settle at the cape.
- The need to struggle for colonies since they were source of prestige forced the British to occupy the cape.
- The desire for the British to invest their surplus capital in South Africa forced them to settle at the cape.
- They wanted to obtain market at the cape to sell British manufactured goods.
- They wanted to protect the British nationals/settlers e.g. traders and farmers, who had settled there by 1806.

- The French invasion of Holland in 1793 worried the British and forced them to occupy the cape before the French could do so.
- British fear of the alliance between France under Napoleon and the Batavian Republic led them to occupy the cape.
- The request made by King William IV of Holland for British Intervention at the Cape made them to occupy the cape.
- The collapse of the Amiens peace treaty of 1802 which made the French to collaborate with the Batavian rulers forced the British to occupy the cape.
- The collapse of the DEICO in 1794, simply invited British intervention hence the occupation of the cape.
- The Vienna settlement of 1814-15 officially handed over the cape to the British as a reward for the defeat of Napoleon.

STEPS TAKEN BY THE BRITISH TO OCCUPY THE CAPE IN 1794 - 1806

How did the British occupy the Cape between 1795-1806 or 1806-1814?

Describe the steps taken by the British to occupy the Cape

Describe the British conquest of the Cape between 1794 and 1814.

- The British were the second group of Europeans to settle at the Cape of South Africa
- They came from Britain/ England
- The British occupied the Cape twice i.e.
- The first occupation was in 1795-1802 and the second was in 1806-1814
- The first occupation was through conquest (force and request)
- By 1792, Britain was engaged in a war against revolutionary France and almost all European powers got involved in this war.
- The wars continued after Napoleon became a leader of France.
- The conquest of the Cape arose from the French invasion of Holland in 1793.
- The Dutch king William V who fled to England requested the British to occupy the Cape.
- The British answered the call because of their fear that the Cape would be taken by the French their enemies.
- This would destroy the British trade pattern with the Far East/ India.
- Amidst all this confusion, DEICO had collapsed in 1794.
- This created political vacuum at the Cape which later led to the British occupation of the Cape.
- The British therefore occupied the Cape in 1795 after launching sea and land attacks.
- In 1802, Britain and France signed a peace treaty of Amiens which restored peace between the two.
- By the terms the Amiens treaty, Britain was to withdraw from the Cape and the French were to leave Holland.
- From 1803 to 1805, the Batavian rulers took over the Cape
- In 1806, Europe again faced wars caused by France under Napoleon Bonaparte 1.
- These wars again threatened the British interests in the Far East.

- Gen. Baird led a fleet of 61 ships to capture the Cape and in 1806; the British once again occupied the Cape.
- In 1814, the Vienna settlement officially recognized the British occupation of the Cape.

THE CAPE UNDER THE BATAVIAN REPUBLIC

How did the Dutch reform the administration of the Cape between 1803 and 1805?

How did the Dutch administer the Cape colony between 1803 and 1806?

Describe the administration of the Cape Colony from 1803-1806.

- The first British occupation of the Cape ended in 1802 after the signing of the Amiens treaty of 1802 following the defeat of Napoleon's forces from Holland.
- The treaty of Amiens made the Boers to regain the Cape Colony under the new name Batavian Republic.
- Between 1803 and 1806, the Cape was under the Batavians.
- Batavian was a new name given to the Cape colony after receiving it from the British (Batavian Cape Dutch).
- The new Batavian government was under a Governor General by names of Lt. Jan Williams Jansens.
- He was assisted by Jacob Demist Abraham as a commissioner General.
- The administration of the Cape by the Batavians was made more effective and less conservative.
- The British were included in the new administration but were contained in lower posts of the civil service.
- Big posts went to the Dutch (Batavians).
- The Batavian government changed the local government by re-arranging and subdividing it into districts.
- Each district was put under an effective administration officer known as the **landrost**.
- Six elders helped the landrost while dealing with civil cases.
- Districts were subdivided and each sub-division was headed by a **field Kornet**.
- The Batavians were liberal having been influenced by the French revolution of 1789.
- The landrost acted as a magistrate and solved minor criminal cases.
- Changes/ reforms were also made in the judicial system by making the high court independent of the executive.
- There was a general link between the general public (local people) and the government i.e. peace was restored in all parts of the Cape.
- The Batavian government started new agricultural projects at the Cape by importing merino sheep from Spain and Austria.
- The Batavian government allocated some land to the non- whites like Africans especially the Khoi-Khoi.
- Trade restrictions were also removed and the farmers were allowed to trade in all goods and commodities.
- Slave labour was reduced and the Batavians started encouraging white labour.
- Freedom of worship was extended to all religions.
- Formal education was promoted over to the non-whites by the Batavian government.

THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF THE BATAVIAN REPUBLIC BETWEEN 1803 AND 1806

- Batavia was a new name given to the Cape colony after receiving it from the British.
- It came up after the peace treaty of Amiens of 1802
- The new administration was headed by a Governor Jan Williams Jansen
- He was assisted by Jacob Abraham Demist as commissioner
- During this period, senior posts were given to Batavians
- The English men were retained in the civil services as subordinate staff.
- The new administration reformed the judicial system at the Cape.
- It removed restrictions on trade and the colony traded in all crops.
- It gave land to the Hottentoes and encouraged new policies of human treatment about slave labour.
- Freedom of worship was extended to all religious denominations.
- New agricultural projects also started in economic field e.g. merino sheep was imported.
- Each district was under government representative called landrost. A landrost acted as magistrates and linked settlers to the government.
- Slave labour was reduced and white labour was encouraged by the Batavian regime.
- Africans who remained as slaves signed contracts.
- Education was extended to the Africans at the Cape by the Batavian Republic.

COLLAPSE OF THE BATAVIAN ADMINISTRATION

Why was the Batavian administration defeated by the British in 1806?

Why did the Batavian government collapse?

What were the causes of the collapse of the Dutch Cape government after 1806?

- Beyond 1802, the Dutch Cape was under the Batavian Republic.
- The Batavian Republic was a new name that the Netherlands got after the change of government in 1802.
- The Batavian Republic was in charge of the Cape colony from 1803 to 1806 when its rule collapsed.
- The second British invasion of the Cape in 1806 ended the Batavian rule.
- Most of the events/ factors leading to the collapse of the Batavian government originated from the events that were taking place in Europe.
- The collapse of the peace treaty of Amiens of 1802 that had been signed between France and Britain led to the collapse of the Batavian government.
- The renewed wars between France and neighbours in Europe made the British to re-occupy the Cape in 1806.
- The friendship between the Batavian Republic in Holland and France scared the British who decided to re-occupy the Cape in 1806.
- The Batavian rulers were too weak to challenge the British forces.
- The British sent a large fleet of 61 ships that gave the Dutch rulers no chance to continue with their administration.
- The British had a superior naval force compared to the Dutch.

- The Dutch forces at the Cape were not well facilitated and this left it weak leading to the British occupation of the Cape in 1806.
- The Dutch government had financial problems and this made it easy for the British to re-occupy the Cape in 1806.
- By 1806, the British had strong desires to safe guard the trade route to India hence occupying the cape.
- The British desire to protect their commercial empire from other powers undermined Dutch rule at the Cape.
- The British desire to protect their farmers at the Cape left the Dutch with no chance.
- The British strong desire to use the Cape as a military base/ defence post made the Dutch helpless.
- The unending wars in Europe had frustrated the markets and the British had no alternative but to chase the Dutch from the Cape in order to get market for their goods.
- The Batavian government had poor relationships with the Africans to their rescue and no wonder they lost their Republic to the British.
- The Batavians welcomed the French into Holland which scared the British since they had interest in the Cape yet Napoleon was an enemy to the British.
- The Dutch rule was undermined by the British interest of establishing a calling station at the Cape.
- Failure of peaceful negotiations between the British and the Boers mad the collapse of the Batavian inevitable.
- Corruption of the Batavian leaders led to the collapse of the Batavian regime.

THE BRITISH REFORMS AT THE CAPE

(Policies that were adopted by the British 1806-1835/ The origin of the great Trek)

What were the reforms introduced by the British at the Cape between 1806 and 1835.

How did the British reform the Cape colony between 1806 and 1835?

- The British were the second group of Europeans to occupy South Africa.
- They occupied the Cape twice i.e. 1795 and 1806
- The British carried out reforms in various areas like administration, judiciary, press, education, economy, language, religion etc.
- **Economically**, the British introduced the British pound to replace the Dutch dollar because its value had fallen.
- The British reduced salaries and wages of the officials including that of the governor which was ten thousand pounds (10,000) per year.
- Expenditure on public projects/ schemes was reduced.
- The British stopped financial assistance to prospective immigrants.
- They built roads, schools which improved the living standards of the people at the Cape.
- All trade restrictions on the farmers were removed and farmers were free to sell their products to anyone who came to the cape.
- **In the Church**, the Dutch Reformed Church was granted liberty.

- The British granted the Roman Catholic Church the right to operate in South Africa.
- They granted freedom of worship to all religions
- The British withdrew state representatives from the Church Synods.
- The British separated the Church from the state.
- The government paid salaries to the Church priests.
- **In terms of language and education**, English was made the official language to replace Dutch.
- In education, the language of instruction was changed from Dutch to English.
- Reading and teaching of English was made compulsory.
- English teachers were given rewards to encourage the spread of the English language.
- **In terms of the press**, the British liberalized the press.
- Freedom of the press was granted and all the old restrictions on press were removed.
- Printers were granted freedom to print news papers
- The newspapers were printed in both English and Dutch.
- **In terms of judiciary**, the British introduced the English legal system at the Cape.
- They set up a supreme court with judges appointed by the British
- In 1811, the black circuits (mobile courts) were created at the Cape
- The Circuit courts were to hear complaints of Africans concerning mistreatment.
- The blacks/ Africans were employed as interpreters in the circuit courts.
- The Judges were to be appointed and paid by the British government.
- Judges were to be just and independent. Therefore, the government could not interfere with their work.
- The British criminal law (English system laws) replaced the Old Dutch criminal law.
- **In terms of administration**, the Dutch were removed from the government.
- In 1825, an advisory council was set up comprising the governors, chief justice and the colonial secretary.
- The main function of the advisory council was to advise the Governor.
- In 1827, two colonialists were given seats on the advisory council and were nominated by the British.
- In 1834, the Legislative council was introduced with powers to pass laws to replace the advisory council
- In 1809, the movements of the Khoikhoi were restricted.
- If the Khoikhoi were to move, they had to get pass or written permission to leave their home districts.
- **On slavery**, there were several reforms throughout the British Empire.
- In 1816, slaves had to be registered to ensure that their number couldn't increase and in 1834, slavery was abolished.
- The Governor introduced a school for the slave children in 1817.
- Working hours for the slaves were reduced by Lord Charles Somerset in 1823.
- All slaves were to be set free within four (4) years from 1834.
- Christian slaves were allowed to go to church on Sundays i.e. they were given freedom of worship.
- Slaves were also granted marriage rights.
- Slaves were protected from brutal treatment from their masters i.e. slave owners.
- The Blacks were given the rights to appeal to court if wages were not paid.

- To protect the slaves from unemployment, freed slaves were to remain working for their masters and being paid.
- The Khoikhoi got back part of their stolen land.
- The 50th ordinance (act) was also passed by the British to give the Africans rights and freedoms.
- All land was to be mapped, surveyed, fenced and land titles issued.

REFORMS INTRODUCED BY LORD CHARLES SOMERSET

**Which reforms were introduced by Lord Somerset between 1814 and 1834?
How did Charles Somerset improve the lives of the slaves at the Cape
between 1814 and 1826?**

- Lord Somerset was born in 1767 to Henry Somerset the Duke of Beaufort/ England.
- He was a professional soldier and a colonial administrator
- Somerset was the second son of the V Duke of Beaufort.
- He was the governor of the Cape between 1814 and 1826.
- He was a very sympathetic man and never wanted the non-whites to suffer i.e. he loved the Africans.
- He did more than other governors to improve the lives of the Africans or slaves at the Cape.
- He introduced social reforms to improve the position of the Africans i.e. he fought for African lives
- The social reforms were contained in the Somerset's declaration.
- He granted more freedom and liberty to the Africans
- He allowed registration of slaves in South Africa.
- He set up a registry office for slaves in each district,
- He posted in each district a protector for slaves.
- From 1816, it became illegal for one to acquire mature slaves.
- All those not registered were declared free men.
- He also stopped the Boers from increasing the number of slaves outside those born of slave parents.
- Later, Somerset built a school in 1817 for slave Children to learn how to read and write.
- Somerset supported the passing of the 50th Act of justice which restored civil rights of the Africans.
- Somerset was behind the killing of defiant Boers in the **"Slatcher's Nek incident"**
- He also fought for African dignity at the Cape.
- In 1824, he issued the famous **"Somerset declaration"** which included the following:
 - Working hours for the slaves were reduced in 1824
 - Sunday was made a resting day for the slaves
 - Slaves who were Christians were allowed to pray on Sunday.
 - The Christian slaves were free to pray on Sunday in Churches of their own choice.
 - Somerset extended freedom and liberty to all the slaves
 - Slaves were assured of protection from their brutal masters .
 - Some of the African stolen land was returned to them.

- Somerset mediated the conflicts among the Bantu and the Boers i.e. the Kaffir wars on the Eastern frontier.
- He encouraged the establishment of Black circuit courts which restored the African rights.
- Africans served as court interpreters in the circuit courts.
- Africans were given freedom to accuse their employees/ Boer masters.
- Africans were allowed to work for paid jobs which improved their standards of living.

EFFECTS OF SOMERSET'S REFORMS

How did Somerset's reforms affect the Africans?

- Africans were given their liberty and freedom.
- Freedom of worship was granted to the Africans.
- Africans enjoyed better working conditions i.e. working hours were reduced.
- Africans were granted freedom of movement.
- Black Circuit courts were put in place to help the Africans.
- Africans were employed as interpreters in the circuit courts.
- Africans received formal education i.e. they were civilized.
- Schools were built for the African Children to learn how to read and write.
- The status of Africans was greatly improved after getting paid employment.
- Africans regained their lost land especially the Khoikhoi.
- The harsh Boer treatment on Africans was put to an end.
- Africans started living a settled life after regaining their land.
- Slavery which was being practiced by the Boers on Africans came to an end.
- It increased the hatred and enmity between Africans and the Boers more than before.

EFFECTS OF THE BRITISH REFORMS ON THE BOERS

- The Boers were not happy with the British reforms at the cape.
- The Boers lost their land that was returned to the Africans especially the Khoikhoi.
- The reforms led to abolition of slavery leading to loss of labour and decline in productivity.
- The Boers lost their superior position to the British.
- The Boers lost control over the religious affairs of the Cape.
- The Dutch Rix dollar was replaced with the English pound.
- It led to the replacement of the Boer language with English and to make matters worse, English was made the official language.
- It led to Boer rebellions between 1815 and 1816 after the Slatcher's nek incident when the rebellious Boers were hanged.
- The Boers opposed the new administrative reforms especially the English laws.
- The Boers were forced to go to the interior in what became the "Great Trek"
- The Boer nationalism greatly increased as a result of the British reforms at the Cape.
- The Boers lost their independence to the British at the cape.
- Wars occurred between the Boers and the Africans leading to loss of lives.
- The Boers also lost their property like land to the Africans and British.

Explain the problems faced by the Boers at the Cape after the coming of the British.

THE PASSING OF BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS IN 1812

- Black circuit courts were mobile courts that were formed after the collapse of the Dutch Batavian government.
- These courts were passed in 1811 but became more serious in 1816.
- They were formed to hear African complaints concerning Boers injustices especially mistreatment.
- They were formed from village to village.
- These courts were formed to answer the conflicts between the Boers and Africans.
- Their establishment was encouraged by Lord Charles Somerset in order to restore African rights.
- Some Africans were to act as interpreters in these black circuit courts.
- The Judges were to be appointed and paid by the British.

REASONS FOR FORMATION OF BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS

- The black circuit courts were formed because of the following reasons;
- The need to end slavery in South Africa that had been promoted by the Boers against the Africans led to the formation of the black circuit courts.
- There was also a strong desire by the British to empower African slaves with more freedom and Liberty hence these courts.
- The strong desire among the British to fight for equality of Africans led to the establishment of Black circuit courts.
- They were created to give back Africans their land that had been stolen by the Boers.
- The British wanted to put an end on Boer exploitation of African slaves hence creating the circuit courts.
- They were formed to fight economic injustice of the Boers that had made Africans poorer than ever before.
- There was also a need to ensure that African workers were paid fairly good wages hence the creation of these courts.
- They were formed to ensure that African workers were treated fairly.
- The Black circuit courts were created to fight for Africans dignity that was being violated by the Boers.
- There was also a need to give a chance to African slaves to choose their employers.
- The need to end the racial tension between the Africans and the Boers led to establishment of Black circuit courts.

EFFECTS OF THE BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS IN SOUTH AFRICA

- African regained their land that had been confiscated by the Boers.
- The Black circuit courts led to a reduction on the slave working hours in South African.
- The courts gave Africans a chance to choose their own masters for the first time in South Africa.

- Africans enjoyed better working conditions as result of the Black circuit courts.
- Sunday was made a resting day in South Africa which gave Africans an opportunity to rest from tiresome work.
- The Africans were allowed to attend church Sunday services as a result of these courts.
- Africans were made equal to whites i.e. Boers and British as a result of these courts.
- Africans were given freedom to accuse their harsh masters in the Black circuit courts.
- The circuit courts led to abolition of Slavery in 1834 which gave Africans freedom.
- The courts led to introduction of paid labour which improved their standards of living.
- Signing of contracts between employers and employees was removed by the Black circuit courts.
- The courts provided employment opportunities to African i.e. they worked as interpreters.
- The courts resulted into the establishment of public schools that taught slave children how to read and write.
- Pass laws were removed and freedom of movement declared as a result of these courts.

THE GREAT TREK/ AFRIKANER EXODUS 1835-1852

- The Great Trek was the massive movement of the Boers from the Cape colony to the interior of South Africa between 1835 and 1852
- It is at times referred to as the ‘**Afrikaner Exodus**/ migration.
- The Great Trek started from areas Graaf Reinet/ Cape running away from the British rule.
- It was a revolt against the British liberal policies mainly embedded in the 50th ordinance.
- The Trekkers moved in three different groups under different leaders and took different directions.
- The key leaders of the Trek included Louis Trigardt, Van Rensburg, Pot Gieter, Piet Retief, Hendrick, Andries Pretorius, Cilliers, Maritz etc.
- The Exodus involved over 10,000 people.
- The Trekkers used ox-wagons carrying all their movable property to the interior.

CAUSES OF THE GREAT TREK

- The causes of the Great Trek were both long-term and immediate as shown below.
- The Boers wanted to be independent i.e. they never wanted to be under the British rule.
- The soils at the Cape had lost fertility forcing the Boers to move to the interior where fertile soils existed.
- The presence of unoccupied land in the interior of South Africa led to the Great Trek because the Boers needed large pieces of land for agriculture.
- The nomadic nature of the Boers always required them to move to look for water and pasture for their animals.

- The love for adventure made the Boers to move away from the Cape in order to discover new areas in the interior South Africa.
- The Boers did not like the change from the Roman Criminal law (Dutch law) to the British law hence the Great Trek.
- The Boers were annoyed by the British who handed over Queen Adelaide province back to the Xhosa hence the Great Trek.
- The making of English to be the official language at the cape was detested by the Boers leading to the Great Trek.
- The Boers rejected/ hated the freedom of worship granted to the Africans and this led to the Great Trek.
- The Passing of the 50th ordinance/ Act/ law which banned the pass laws and restored African civil rights caused the Great Trek.
- The Boers also trekked because they thought that they were a superior race (God given race) and that the Promised Land was the interior of South Africa.
- The introduction of the Black circuit courts in 1811 did not please the Boers and this forced them to trek into the interior.
- The Bandwagon effect made the Boers to trek i.e. they moved because some of their friends were also moving.
- The activities of the missionaries at the Cape annoyed the Boers i.e. they called for freedom of worship, abolition of slavery, giving back land to the Bantu etc. leading to the Great Trek.
- The murder of the four Boers at Slatcher Nek incident in 1816 also caused the Great Trek.
- The Boers were also not happy about missionaries marrying African slaves e.g. Dr. Phillip and Van Dekemp.
- The Boers hated the British land policies i.e. mapping and fencing of land thus leading to the Great Trek.
- The Boers also moved from the cape in search for a good climate hence the Great Trek.
- The role of the missionaries and the government made the Boers to move away from the cape i.e. British missionaries supported the Khoisan and Bantu against the Boers.
 - The missionaries' act of advocating freedom of liberty to the Africans was disliked by the Boers thus the Great Trek.
 - The missionaries influenced the government to pass the Black circuit courts which the Boers opposed led to the Great Trek.
 - Missionary protection to the runaway slaves annoyed the Boers hence the Great Trek.
 - The missionaries undermined the Dutch Reformed Church of the Boers which annoyed them leading to the Great Trek.
 - The Boers were also not happy about missionaries marrying African slaves e.g. Dr. Phillip and Van Dekemp.
 - They also called for the freedom of worship in South Africa which also annoyed the Boers hence trekking into the interior of South Africa.
 - Their activity led to the abolition of slavery leading to the shortage of labour on the side of the Boers.

- Missionaries influenced the passing of the 50th ordinance especially Dr. John Phillip.
- Van Dekemp influenced the giving back of land to the Bantu and Khoisan which annoyed the Boers.

Explain the role of missionaries in the outbreak of the Great Trek.

THE COURSE OF THE GREAT TREK

- The Great Trek was a great journey made by the Boers from the Cape to the interior of South Africa between 1835 and 1852.
- The word “Trek” is an Afrikaner or Boer word for the great journey made by wagons/chariots.
- The trekkers started off in cape areas near Graaf Reinet.
- For the first ten (10) years, about 14,000 trekkers had left the cape using ox-wagons as means of transport.
- The Great Trek was against the British reforms at the cape.
- The Trekkers moved in three major groups from the Cape/Graff Reinet into the interior of South Africa.
- The key leaders of the Trek included Louis Trigardt, Van Rensburg, Pot Gieter, Piet Retief, Hendrick, Andres Pretorius, Gilliers, Martz etc.
- The first group to move from the Cape was led by Louis Trigardt who was later joined by Van Resenburg.
- The Boers in this group were few in number i.e. about 100 families and unprepared for the long journey.
- The Trekkers in this group avoided the overcrowded coastal areas because they were not strong enough to confront the Africans at the coast.
- They followed the middle grassland (Veld), west of the Drakensburg Mountains.
- They crossed River Orange and River Vaal to the interior.
- They first settled at Zout Pansburg in Transvaal where Africans killed most of them.
- This group met several dangers or problems in Transvaal (unknown lands).
- Such dangers included; shortages of guns and gun powder, inadequate consumable goods, diseases like malaria etc.
- As a result of the problems, the Boers were wiped out by the Africans of the Limpopo valley and many died of fever.
- Later, Trigardt and his followers left Transvaal and moved to Laurencio-marques present day Maputo (Mozambique).
- Out of 100 families of the Boer trekkers that had left the Cape, only 27 families survived and reached Maputo.
- This group of trekkers led to the establishment of **Transvaal-Boer Republic.**
- The creation of Boer republic started with the Boer settlement at Zout Pansburg present day North of Transvaal.
- In 1852, the Sand River convention legally gave the Boers powers to live in the North of Transvaal which became their republic thus the creation of Transvaal Boer republic.

How was Transvaal Boer Republic created?

Describe the movement/ journey of Louis Trigardt

Explain the establishment of the Transvaal Boer Republic by 1852?

- The second group of Boer trekkers was led by Hendrick, Potgieter, Gert Maritz and Sarel Cilliers.
- This was the largest group of Boer trekkers who left the cape as early as 1836.
- They were joined by a group led by Gert Maritz and consisted of farmers from Graaf Reinet.
- On 19th October 1836, these trekkers confronted the Ndebele under chief Mzilikazi at the battle of Vegkop.
- The Ndebele were defeated in this battle by the Boers.
- After the battle of Vegkop, some Boers continued with their movement in High Veld.
- In January 1837, Mzilikazi's military towns were raided by the Boers and captured a large number of cattle from the Ndebele.
- Mzilikazi then led his people Northwards across the Limpopo River to Northern Rhodesia present day Zimbabwe.
- As a result, the trekkers settled into the North of the Vaal and Orange River later.
- This group led to the establishment of the Orange Free State (OFS).
- The constitution was made which defined other things;
- The Dutch Reformed Church became the official Church and Dutch became the official language of the Orange Free State.
- A people's council known as the Volksraad of about 56 members came into being.
- A president was to be elected every five (5) years.
- Therefore, Hottman was elected as the first president of the Orange Free State.
- This is how the Boer Republic of the **Orange Free State** was established and became the second group of Boer trekkers.

How was Orange Free State Republic established?

Describe the formation of Orange Free State by the Boers.

How was Orange Free State Republic founded?

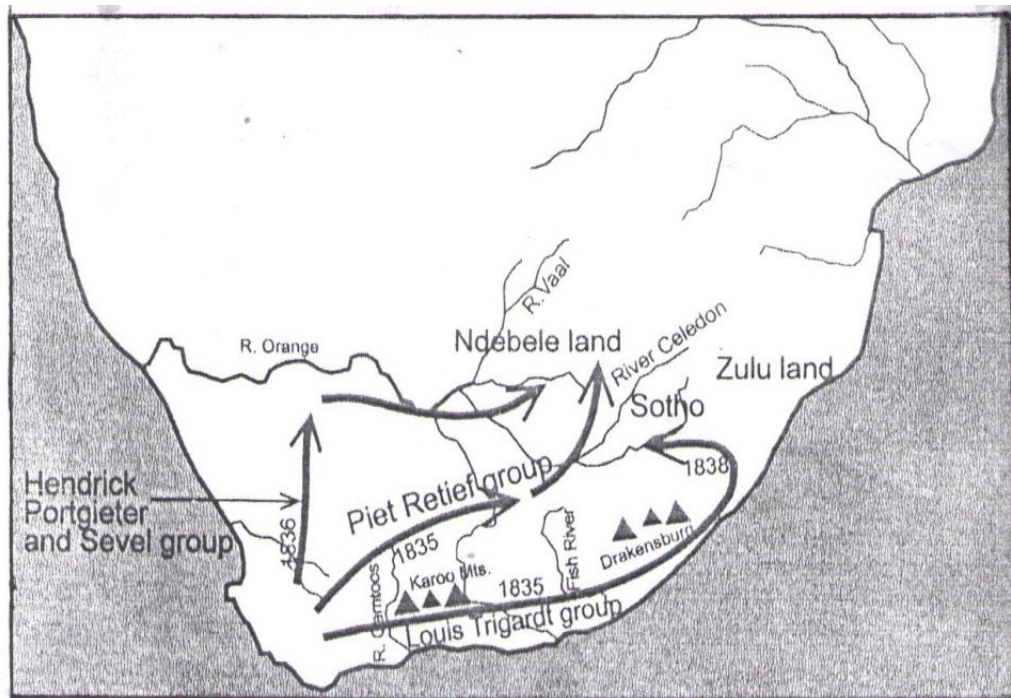
- The third group of Boer trekkers was led by Piet Retief who left the Cape towards the end of 1836.
- Piet Retief was born in November 1780 and died on 6th/February/1838.
- His father was called Jacobus Retief and the mother was Deborah.
- He was the spokesperson of the frontier Boers.
- Piet Retief convinced his family to leave the Cape and left with two wagons.
- Piet's group was later joined by 30 other wagons.
- These were previously led by Maritz and Pretorius.
- Piet Retief arrived in Zululand in 1837 where he met the Zulu leader Dingane and requested for land.
- Retief was promised land by Dingane after recovering his cattle stolen by the neighbouring Tlokwa chief Sekonyera.
- Dingane was alarmed and became suspicious of the armed white men
- Dingane had been warned by the Xhosa chief Margabit, that the whites had overthrown many African leaders.
- Even then, all the Bantu regarded the whites as "mzungu", devils, sea monsters etc.
- Piet Retief tricked Sekonyera and recovered the cattle.

- As a way of thanking him, Dingane organized a beer party and while at the party, he killed Piet Retief.
- Even, some of Piet's followers were killed by Dingane at the party.
- In 1838, the Boers under the leadership of Andries Pretorius revenged and fought the Zulu under Dingane.
- This was the battle of Blood- River fought on 16th December 1838 on the banks of River Donga / Blood River.
- The Zulu under Dingane were defeated by the Boers under Andries Pretorius.
- The Zulu lost part of their land to the trekkers. In this land, the trekkers declared the Republic of Natal (Natalia) in 1838.
- This group of Boer trekkers led to the establishment of Natal republic in 1838.
- Dingane the king of the Zulu state was overthrown by the Boers and Mpande his brother became the new king with the help of the Boers.
- Dingane went into exile in Swaziland.
- He was captured and later killed by the Swazi chief as a revenge for Dingane's earlier attacks on the Swazi state.
- The Boers demanded 700 heads of cattle from Mpande for the support they had given him in rising to power.
- The Volksraad (people's council) made up of 24 trekkers was put in place.
- Andries Pretorius became the new Commander in General.
- A new capital called Piet Maritzburg was created.
- In 1843, the republic of Natal was annexed by the British. It declined in power and influence.
- The Natal Republic was incorporated into the cape colony in 1845.
- Andres Pretorius led the unhappy Boers out of Natal and reached Transvaal around 1852.
- This ended the chapter of the Great Trek.

Describe the foundation of Natal Republic

Describe the journey of Piet Retief from the cape into the interior of South Africa.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING BOER TREK ROUTES



PROBLEMS FACED BY THE TREKKERS

- The trekkers faced a problem of African resistances especially Ndebele and the Zulu i.e. the battles of Vegkop and Blood River.
- The Boer trekkers lost their lives as a result of wars.
- The Boer leaders were killed especially Piet Retief at a beer party by Dingane.
- The trekkers lost their animals (cattle) to the Africans during the time of raids and counter raiding.
- They were depopulated due to loss of lives e.g. 27 families remained out of one hundred in the first group
- The Boers in Natal experienced internal conflicts among their families leading to disunity.
- Language barrier was another problem i.e. the trekkers could not speak the African local language e.g. Zulu, Sindebele etc.
- Diseases like sleeping sickness, malaria etc. killed the Boers and reduced their number e.g. out of 100 families in the first group, only 27 reached Maputo led by Louis Trigardt.
- The Boers lacked geographical knowledge of the interior of South Africa and this affected their movements.
- The British imperialism and their desire to follow up the Boers in the interior was another problem.
- The British annexation of Natal in 1843, Orange Free State in 1848 and Transvaal in 1877 annoyed the Boers.
- They faced a problem of land disputes because Africans wanted to preserve their land.

- They were killed by wild animals due to the thick impenetrable forests they came across.
- Some Boers were militarily weak and could not challenge the Africans like the coastal Bantu e.g. the Zulu.
- The Boers were hated by the Africans who regarded them as devils, sea monsters, wizards etc.
- The Boers lacked basic facilities like shelter, medicine etc.
- Poor transport network i.e. the ox-wagons often broke down hindering their movement into the interior.
- The Boers lacked funds especially in their homes since they didn't have a permanent source of income.
- The Boers lacked stable and powerful leaders especially after the death of Piet Retief.
- Their animals suffered from Nagana which reduced their numbers and this put them in a state of poverty.
- There was also poor communication network due to the distance between the interior, cape and their home.
- There faced a problem of harsh climate i.e. heavy rainfall and drought affected the Boer trekkers.

EFFECTS OF THE GREAT TREK

- The Great trek was a turning point in the history of South Africa i.e. a large number of Dutch speaking people left the cape for the interior of South Africa.
- The Great trek led to establishment of Boer republics in the interior like Natal, Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- The trek led to increased hostility in the interior especially between Boers and British leading to Anglo-Boer wars.
- The Boers established institutions which favoured their interests in the interior like the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC) became the official church and Dutch became the official language.
- The Great trek opened the interior of South Africa for European settlement.
- Many Africans lost their land to the Boers and were sent into reserves.
- Africans were enslaved after losing their land and cattle like the Xhosa, Zulu etc. suffered from forced labour.
- Africans became second class citizens as a result of the Great trek.
- It led to wars in the interior between the Africans and the Boer trekkers like battle of Vegkop and Blood River.
- Africans were defeated in the wars they fought with the Boers.
- Africans lost their independence to the Boers.
- The traditional African chiefs lost their powers and authority to the whites.
- The Great Trek led to misery and suffering on the Africans.
- The Great trek wars led to destruction of property like crops, home steads, farms etc.
- There was great decline of agricultural activities e.g. commercial farming and pastoralism leading to famine.
- Africans lost their cattle like Dingane, the Zulu king lost many heads of cattle to the Boers.
- Africans got divided and conflicted with each other like Dingane against Mpande.

- The Great trek weakened African societies e.g. the Zulu and Ndebele which led to easy colonization of the region.
- It led to the introduction of the western culture in the interior e.g. dressing, religion which affected African culture.
- It led to the British occupation of Natal in 1843, Orange Free State in 1848 and Transvaal in 1877 following the victory of the Boers.
- It led to the abortive Jameson raid in 1895.
- It led to the White man's discovery of minerals like Diamond in 1867 at Kimberly and Gold in 1886 at Witwatersrand.
- The British attitude towards the Boers changed in order to discourage them from further migrations.

THE GREAT TREK WARS

THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP (1836)

- The battle of Vegkop was one of the Great trek wars.
- It was fought by the Ndebele and Boers.
- These Boers constituted the second group of the trekkers from the interior of South Africa.
- The actual fighting began on 19th October 1836.
- The war took place at Masega/Marico valley between Orange and Vaal Rivers.
- The Boers were led by Portgieter, Maritz and Celliers while the Ndebele were led by Mzilikazi
- It is the Boers who instigated and engineered the war i.e. Portgieter and Celliers provoked the Ndebele.
- The Boers had moved to the interior hoping that the area was unoccupied but they were only surprised to find the Ndebele occupying the area.

CAUSES OF THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP

- The outbreak/ occurrence of the Great Trek laid a foundation for the battle of Vegkop.
- The increasing number of Boers into the interior scared the Ndebele hence a war.
- The Ndebele wanted to protect their land from being taken by the Boers.
- The Boers' determination to get land from Africans to establish their new republics at all costs also caused the war.
- The Boers' desire to be independent as a result of the introduction of British reforms at the Cape also caused the Vegkop battle.
- The Boers were searching for freedom in the interior and this caused war between them and the Ndebele.
- The rise of Boer nationalism i.e. the Boer had natural pride, arrogance and their feeling of supremacy did not go well with Africans leading to war.
- The war-like nature of the Ndebele annoyed the trekkers leading to the battle of Vegkop i.e. they were war mongers.
- The Boers were forced to fight the Ndebele because they had guns which had profound impact on their confidence.

- The failure of land negotiations between the two made the battle of Vegkop inevitable.
- The issue of cattle led to cattle raids and counter raids from both sides and this increased the need to regain the lost cattle.
- The natural calamities like famine and drought affected the two parties leading to war i.e. the Ndebele and the trekkers started fighting for food in order to survive.
- The earlier victory registered by the Ndebele after killing of the early trekkers like Erasmus and Liebenberg encouraged them to fight
- The Boers were fighting the Ndebele as a way of revenge because of the earlier battle in which the Boers were killed.
- The need to preserve or protect African independence by the Ndebele society caused the war.
- The Ndebele were encouraged by able and determined leadership of Mzilikazi.
- The Ndebele wanted to defend their culture/ traditional values from being eroded away by the whites.
- Africans had mistaken the whites for being wizards, devils, sea monsters hence war.
- The Boers also took Africans as anti-developmental and this annoyed the Africans hence war.
- The Boers' need to rescue the three American missionaries that had been kidnapped by the Ndebele caused the battle.
- The support given by chief Moroka of the Baralong further encouraged the trekkers to fight the Africans.
- The camping of Boer commanders at Vegkop left the Ndebele with no alternative but to fight for survival.
- The Boers were motivated by their advanced military tactics of the 'Laager system' i.e. the Boers reassembled their landers at Vegkop that forced the Africans to fight them.

WHY WERE THE NDEBELE DEFEATED AT THE BATTLE

- The outstanding trek leaders like Portgieter, Cilliers among others led to the defeat of the Ndebele.
- The Boers had well organized camps that enabled them to defeat the Ndebele.
- The Boer national pride/ nationalism brought them together against the Ndebele.
- The Boers' determination to establish homes in the interior led to the defeat of the Ndebele.
- The Boers had superior weapons like guns and gun powder unlike their counter parts the Africans who had inferior weapons like spears.
- The Boers used the scorched earth policy of burning property especially crops hence weakening the Africans.
- Some Africans collaborated with the Boers like chief Moroka of Baralong assisted the Boers against the Ndebele.
- The Boers used surprise attacks against the Ndebele i.e. invaded them unaware.
- The Ndebele had been defeated by natural calamities especially drought that resulted into raids for food.
- Famine also weakened the Ndebele making the Boers to easily defeat them.

- The Boers were moving in circular form engulfing the enemy thus defeating the Ndebele.
- The Boers had superior fighting tactics like Laager techniques of defence.
- The outbreak of diseases like malaria, sleeping sickness etc. weakened the Ndebele leading to their defeat.
- The loss of cattle due to cattle raids weakened the Ndebele economy which led to their defeat by the Boers.
- The Ndebele were too poor to sustain the war yet the Boers had enough resources.
- The Ndebele were also betrayed by their neighbours who never supported them like the Baralong.
- The Ndebele also believed that, their gods would help them and this was not realized making them lose war to the Boers.

EFFECTS OF THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP

- The Ndebele were defeated in the battle of Vegkop by the Boer trekkers because they had inferior weapons.
- The Ndebele were pushed Northwards into modern Zimbabwe where they formed the Ndebele kingdom.
- Many people were displaced as a result of the war.
- The war led to the establishment of the Boer republic of Orange Free State.
- The Ndebele lost their independence to the Boer trekkers.
- Agriculture and trade were disrupted as a result of Vegkop battle.
- The war led to the outbreak of famine as a result of destruction of crops.
- The Ndebele lost their cattle i.e. over 10,000 cows were lost.
- The war led to the loss of lives and depopulation of the region (interior of South Africa).
- The Ndebele lost their land to the Boers which made the Africans become very poor.
- The war resulted into suffering and misery among the Ndebele.
- The Boers lost some of their leaders like Erasmus and Liebenberg.
- The three American missionaries who had been kidnapped/ captured were set free after the battle of Vegkop.
- The Ndebele were enslaved and mistreated by the Boers.
- The Boers regained some of their weapons and cows that had been stolen by the Ndebele.
- It prepared the ground for future wars between the Basuto and Boers.

THE BATTLE OF THE BLOOD RIVER 1838

- The battle of the Blood River was the conflict between the Zulu and trekking Boers of Piet Retief's group.
- The battle took place around the Blood River and Dong in December 1838.
- The Zulu were led by Chief Dingane yet the Boers by Pretorius.

CAUSES OF THE BATTLE OF THE BLOOD RIVER

What were the causes of the conflicts between the Boers and the Zulu in 1838?

What were the causes of the conflict between Chief Dingane and the trekking Boers in 1838?

- The long held hatred and mistrust between the Zulu and the Boers led to the war in 1838.
- The warning of the Zulu by the Xhosa refugee not to trust the White trekkers caused the war.
- The Boers' strong determination to establish a Republic in Zulu land caused the war.
- The need for Zulu to protect their land from the trekking Boers also caused the war.
- The strong desire by the Zulu to protect their independence that was being threatened by the Boers also caused the war.
- The Zulu wanted to protect their cattle that were being raided and stolen by the Boers.
- The constant raiding and stealing of cattle between the two also caused the war.
- Chief Dingane looked at the Boers as wizards and wanted to chase them away from the Kingdom hence a war.
- The warrior nature of Zulu kingdom encouraged them to fight against the Whites.
- The Zulu had acquired guns and this gave them courage to fight the Boers.
- The failure of peaceful negotiations between Piet and Dingane led to the Battle.
- The early military success of the Zulu against Piet and his group gave the Zulu morale to attack the Boers.
- The refusal of Dingane to give land to Piet Retief and even killed him annoyed the Boers thus causing the Battle.
- The appointment of a new Boer leader Pretorius after the death of Piet Retief gave the Boers courage to fight.
- The increasing number of Boers in the Zulu land worried Dingane leading to the battle.
- The undermining of the Zulu culture by the Boers also made the battle inevitable.

EFFECTS OF THE BATTLE OF BLOOD RIVER

How did the battle of Blood River affect the Boers and Africans?

- The battle led to the defeat of the Zulu and Dingane escaped to Swaziland.
- The Zulu lost their independence when Dingane gave up Natal to the Boers.
- It led to the creation of a new Boer Republic called Natal in Zulu land.
- The Zulu lost much of their land to the Boers after the defeat.
- The war led to large scale loss of lives on both sides which resulted into depopulation.
- It also resulted into displacement of the Zulu from their homeland and loss of tribal identity.
- The battle led to decline of economic activities and loss of cattle on both sides e.g. Dingane lost over 17,000 cattle.
- The battle also led to destruction of property like plantations, homes among others.
- There was a period of suffering, misery and poverty after the battle.
- The Zulu kingdom was weakened and reduced in size after the war.
- It led to the collapse of Dingane's rule and his brother Mpande took over as a new leader.

- The war divided up the Zulu ruling family when Mpande sided with the Boers against his brother Dingane.
- It marked the start of the White men's interference in the politics of Zulu land.
- The war gave grounds for the future British occupation of Natal and annexation.
- It increased the enmity and hostility between the Zulu and the Boers.
- The war gave grounds for future African resistance against the whites in South Africa.

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF NATAL BOER REPUBLIC

How was the Natal Boer Republic established?

- The Boer Republic of Natal established by the third group of the Boer trekkers.
- The third group of Boer trekkers was led by Piet Retief who left the Cape towards the end of 1836.
- Piet Retief was born in November 1780 and died on 6th/February/1838.
- His father was called Jacobus Retief and the mother was Deborah.
- He was the spokesperson of the frontier Boers.
- Piet Retief convinced his family to leave the Cape and left with two wagons.
- Piet's group was later joined by 30 other wagons.
- These were previously led by Maritz and Pretorious.
- Piet Retief arrived in Zululand in 1837 where he met the Zulu leader Dingane and requested for land.
- Retief was promised land by Dingane after recovering his cattle stolen by the neighbouring Tlokwa chief Sekonyera.
- Dingane was alarmed and became suspicious of the armed white men
- Dingane had been warned by the Xhosa chief Margabit, that the whites had overthrown many African leaders.
- Even then, all the Bantu regarded the whites as "mzungu", devils, sea monsters etc.
- Piet Retief tricked Sekonyera and recovered the cattle.
- As a way of thanking him, Dingane organized a beer party and while at the party, he killed Piet Retief.
- Even, some of Piet's followers were killed by Dingane at the party.
- In 1838, the Boers under the leadership of Andries Pretorious revenged and fought the Zulu under Dingane.
- This was the battle of Blood- River fought on 16th December 1838 on the banks of River Donga / Blood River.
- The Zulu under Dingane were defeated by the Boers under Andries Pretorious.
- The Zulu lost part of their land to the trekkers. In this land, the trekkers declared the Republic of Natal (Natalia) in 1838.
- This group of Boer trekkers led to the establishment of Natal republic in 1838.
- Dingane the king of the Zulu state was overthrown by the Boers and Mpande his brother became the new king with the help of the Boers.
- Dingane went into exile in Swaziland.
- He was captured and later killed by the Swazi chief as a revenge for Dingane's earlier attacks on the Swazi state.

- The Boers demanded 700 heads of cattle from Mpande for the support they had given him in rising to power.
- The Volksraad (people's council) made up of 24 trekkers was put in place.
- Andries Pretorius became the new Commander in General.
- A new capital called Piet Maritzburg was created.
- In 1843, the Republic of Natal was annexed by the British. It declined in power and influence.
- The Natal Republic was incorporated into the Cape colony in 1845.
- Andries Pretorius led the unhappy Boers out of Natal and reached Transvaal around 1852.

FACTORS/REASONS FOR THE ESTABLISHMENT OF NATAL BOER REPUBLIC

What factors led to the establishment of the Natal Republic in 1838?

- Natal republic was formed by the Boers as a result of the Great trek.
- The third group led by Piet Retief contributed to the establishment of Natal province.
- The Boers wanted to be independent from the British interference.
- The Boers wanted to acquire land to carry out agriculture since they were farmers.
- The death of Piet Retief created room for revenge by the Boers hence the blood river battle after which Natal was established.
- The good climate of Natal attracted the Boers to establish a Republic.
- The Boers had a strong army well equipped with guns hence Africans were defeated and Natal was established.
- The Zulu around Natal were weak following the Mfecane period.
- The success of the Boers under Andries Pretorius led to the establishment of Natal.
- The courage of Andries Pretorius also created room for establishment of the Natal Republic.
- The existence of collaborating Zulu like Mpande further lifted Boer spirit of nationalism and the need to stay in Natal.
- Natal had fertile soils that supported farming which forced the Boers to occupy it.

THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF THE BOER REPUBLICS

The British annexed the Boer Republics of Natal in 1843, Orange Free State in 1848 plus Transvaal in 1877 and incorporated them into the Cape Colony.

THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF NATAL PROVINCE IN 1843

Why was Natal annexed by the British in 1843?

Why did the Boer republic of Natal lose her independence in 1843?

- Natal was founded by the Boer trekkers under Piet Retief and Andries Pretorius.
- It was founded in 1838 – 1839.
- It was formed after the battle of Blood River which broke out on 16th/12/1838.
- Natal initially belonged to the Zulu.

- In 1843, the British forces led by Capt. Smith attacked and annexed Natal thus ending her independence.
- In 1845, Natal was incorporated into the Cape colony.
- The British never wanted the Boers to live independent hence annexing Natal.
- Natal was annexed because of the following;
- The annexation of Natal was to discourage further Boer migrations into the interior of South Africa.
- The British had received reports that Boers were enslaving the Africans and this led to annexation of Natal.
- The British policy of following up the Boers wherever they went led to this annexation.
- The kaffir wars at the Eastern borders of the Cape colony between the Boers and the Africans alarmed the British hence annexing Natal.
- The British hoped to use Natal as the base for creating peace on the eastern frontier to stop kaffir wars.
- The British wanted to destroy port Natal as a rival trading point to the Cape.
- They wanted to use Natal as a base for extending their imperialism into the interior of South Africa.
- The fertile soils in Natal that favoured agriculture forced the British to annex Natal in 1843.
- The British wanted to prevent the extension of racism i.e. discrimination of the blacks into the interior.
- There were rumours that Natal was rich in minerals which increased British determination to annex it.
- The British also claimed that, the Boers were very weak and needed to be protected from Africans hence the annexation.
- They also claimed that the Volksraad was ineffective in the modern times hence the annexation of Natal.
- The long term hatred between the Boers and the British also led to the annexation of Boer Republic.
- The British fear of Natal to compete with them in trade led to the annexation of Natal.
- The British never wanted the Boers to have connections with other Europeans.
- Lack of a stable political government in Natal encouraged the British to annex it.
- The British feared that the Boers would ally with powerful African leaders against them and this forced them to annex Natal.
- The bankruptcy of the Boers in Natal attracted the British to annex the Republic in 1843.
- The efforts of the British colonial secretary Lord Stanley who never trusted the Boers because of their corrupt and evil government led to the annexation.
- The British wanted to protect their nationals i.e. traders and farmers already in Natal.
- The failure of negotiation between the Boers and the British resulted into the annexation of Natal republic.
- The British also claimed that part of Natal had earlier been given to them by Shaka.
- The displacement of the Pondo under Faku, by the Boers sparked off the annexation of Natal.

EFFECTS OF THE ANNEXATION OF NATAL REPUBLIC

What were the effects of the British annexation of Natal on the whites or Blacks?

ON THE WHITES (BRITISH AND BOERS)

- The Boer Republic of Natal came to an end and the Boers lost independence
- Natal became part of the British Cape colony.
- It led to displacement of the Boers i.e. they moved to other provinces like Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- The British were forced to extend their rule to Orange Free State and Transvaal hence the annexation of the two in 1848 and 1877 respectively.
- It led to conflicts between the migrant Boers and Africans.
- It led to depopulation of Boers as a result of wars.
- The Boers lost their valuable property to the British e.g. cattle, land etc.
- The annexation of Natal made wars between the British and the Boers inevitable.
- The annexation led to the establishment of Natal plantations for sugar cane, cotton, coffee etc. hence development.
- The Boers became very poor as a result of loss of valuable property.
- The Boers lived a miserable life and they suffered a lot.
- The annexation intensified the enmity between the Boers and the British leading Anglo-Boer wars.
- It led to increased Boer nationalism.
- The Boer racism spread into the interior of South Africa.
- The British imperialism increased leading to the annexation of other Boer Republics e.g. the Orange Free State in 1848 and Transvaal in 1877.
- The British started interfering in the African politics which wasn't the case before.
- The annexation of Natal led to the signing of treaties of Sand River and Bloemfontein between the Boers and the British.
- These treaties gave the Boer republics of Orange Free State and Transvaal their independence.

ON THE AFRICANS

- Wars occurred between the Whites and the Blacks.
- The wars created insecurity in the region.
- The annexation led to discrimination of Blacks from the whites.
- Africans lost their cattle to the Whites.
- The British interfered in the politics of the Blacks especially the Zulu.
- Africans lost their independence to the Whites.
- Traditional local chiefs lost power e.g. Mpande, Ceteswayo etc.
- It intensified succession disputes in Zulu land leading to wars among Africans.
- Africans were depopulated due to loss of lives.
- Africans lost their land and were displaced.
- Africans became very poor due to loss of property e.g. cattle.

- Africans were exploited i.e. they were forced to work for the Whites and were either paid less or not paid.
- Africans lost their culture and values and adopted those of the whites.
- It led to suffering and misery on the side of the Africans.

How did the annexation of Natal affect the following?

- (a) **The Boers**
- (b) **The Africans**
- (c) **The British**

THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF ORANGE FREE STATES (O.F.S) 1848

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF ORANGE FREE STATE

How was Orange Free State Republic established?

Describe the formation of Orange Free State by the Boers.

How was Orange Free State Republic founded?

- Orange Free State was formed by the Boer Trekkers of the second group under Portgieter, Hendrick, and Sarel Cilliers.
- They were joined by a group led by Gert Maritz and consisted of farmers from Graaf Reinet.
- This was the largest group of Boer trekkers who left the cape as early as 1836.
- The state was formed after the defeat of the Ndebele at the battle of Vegkop.
- The second group of Boer trekkers was led by Hendrick, Potgieter, Gert Maritz and Sarel Cilliers.
- On 19th October 1836, these trekkers confronted the Ndebele under chief Mzilikazi at the battle of Vegkop.
- The Ndebele were defeated in this battle by the Boers.
- After the battle of Vegkop, some Boers continued with their movement in High Veld.
- In January 1837, Mzilikazi's military towns were raided by the Boers and captured a large number of cattle from the Ndebele.
- Mzilikazi then led his people Northwards across the Limpopo River to Northern Rhodesia present day Zimbabwe.
- As a result, the trekkers settled into the North of the Vaal and Orange River later.
- This group led to the establishment of the Orange Free State (OFS).
- The constitution was made which defined other things;
- The Dutch Reformed Church became the official Church and Dutch became the official language of the Orange Free State.
- A people's council known as the Volksraad of about 56 members came into being.
- A president was to be elected every five (5) years.
- Therefore, Hottman was elected as the first president of the Orange Free State.
- This is how the Boer Republic of the **Orange Free State** was established and became the second group of Boer trekkers.

FACTORS FOR THE ANNEXATION OF ORANGE FREE STATES (O.F.S)

What led to the British occupation of Orange Free State in 1848?

- It was called Orange River sovereignty but later was renamed Orange Free State after the Bloemfontein convention of 1854.
- The British governor Sir Harry Smith annexed it to the Cape colony in 1851.
- Before its annexation, the British had a resident officer in it Major H.D. Warden.
- It was annexed because of the following;
 - The British desire to control the Boers in one state caused the annexation of Orange Free State.
 - The annexation was part of the continuous following of the Boers by the British in the interior.
 - The British desire to destroy Boer nationalism led to the annexation of the state.
 - The long held mistrust and suspicion between the Boers and the British caused the annexation.
 - The British imperialism and the desire to control the whole of South Africa also led to the annexation.
 - The British wanted to control further Boer movements in the interior of South Africa.
 - The British were encouraged by their early annexation of Natal in 1843.
 - The British wanted to use O.F.S to extend their influence in the interior.
 - O.F.S had a scattered Boer population which encouraged the British to annex it.
 - The disunity among the Boers encouraged the annexation of the state in 1848.
 - The desire by the British to set up a strong and effective government in the area since the Boers had failed led to the annexation.
 - Endless land conflicts between the Boers and Bantu led to its annexation.
 - Boundary conflicts between the Bantu and Boers attracted the British to occupy it.
 - The Boer mistreatment of Africans attracted the British to intervene by annexing the state.
 - The British expectation of minerals in O.F.S made its annexation inevitable.
 - The British wanted to stop the Boer enslavement of Africans hence annexing the state.
 - The British desire to stop the Boers' policy of land grabbing caused the annexation of O.R.S.

EFFECTS OF THE ANNEXATION OF ORANGE FREE STATE

How did the occupation of O.F.S affect the people of South Africa?

- Orange River sovereignty was made part of the British Cape colony.
- The annexation led to loss of Boers' independence to the British.
- It increased the hatred and enmity between the Boers and the British.
- It led to the formation of small Boer Republics like Lydenburg, Zoutpansburg and Utrecht.
- The annexation increased Boer nationalism and the desire for self-rule.
- It caused Anglo-Boer wars like Anglo Boer war 1 1880-1881 war, Jameson raid 1895 and 2nd Anglo-Boer war 1899-1902.
- The annexation laid a ground for the federation of South Africa.
- It also led to extension of the British rule into Transvaal.

- The British interfered in the political affairs of Africans in the interior e.g. they supported the Rolong against their enemies the Taungo.
- It led to the replacement of Warden Green as the British resident officer in Bloemfontein.
- It led to increased white population in the interior of South Africa.
- It also led to the signing of the Bloemfontein convention in 1854 between the British and the Boers.
- It led to the drawing of the warden line dividing the Boer farmers and Basotho government by Major Warden.
- The British became determined to conquer and destroy the Sotho state.
- The annexation bred instability and insecurity in the Cape colony.
- It led to loss of African land to the whites.
- It weakened the economies of Africans due to loss of cattle and property destruction.
- The constant white attacks caused famine to Africans.
- Africans were displaced and many started invading Cape Colony for food.
- The annexation divided Africans i.e. the Basuto conflicted with the Rolong and Tlokwa.
- The Basuto land was declared a British protectorate in 1868 by Governor Philip.

THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF TRANSVAAL 1877

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF TRANSVAAL BOER REPUBLIC

How was Transvaal Boer Republic created?

Describe the movement/ journey of Louis Trigardt into the interior of South Africa.

Explain the establishment of the Transvaal Boer Republic by 1852?

- The Boer Republic of Transvaal was created by the first group of the Boer trekkers.
- The first group to move from the Cape was led by Louis Trigardt who was later joined by Van Resenburg.
- The Boers in this group were few in number i.e. about 100 families and unprepared for the long journey.
- The Trekkers in this group avoided the overcrowded coastal areas because they were not strong enough to confront the Africans at the coast.
- They followed the middle grassland (Veld), west of the Drakensburg Mountains.
- They crossed River Orange and River Vaal to the interior.
- They first settled at Zout Pansburg in Transvaal where Africans killed most of them.
- This group met several dangers or problems in Transvaal (unknown lands).
- Such dangers included; shortages of guns and gun powder, inadequate consumable goods, diseases like malaria etc.
- As a result of the problems, the Boers were wiped out by the Africans of the Limpopo valley and many died of fever.
- Later, Trigardt and his followers left Transvaal and moved to Laurensburg (present day Maputo (Mozambique)).
- Out of 100 families of the Boer trekkers that had left the Cape, only 27 families survived and reached Maputo.

- This group of trekkers led to the establishment of **Transvaal-Boer Republic**.
- The creation of Boer republic started with the Boer settlement at Zout Pansburg present day North of Transvaal.
- In 1852, the Sand River convention legally gave the Boers powers to live in the North of Transvaal which became their Republic thus the creation of **Transvaal Boer Republic**.

REASONS FOR ANNEXATION OF TRANSVAAL BOER REPUBLIC

Why did the British annex the republic of Transvaal in 1877?

- Transvaal was founded by the Boer Trekkers from the cape.
- From 1845 when the Republic was formed, it remained independent until 1877 when the British annexed it
- The long held hatred and suspicion between the Boers and the British led to the annexation of Transvaal.
- The British never wanted the Boers to become independent hence their annexation of Transvaal.
- The British thought that the Boers had been weakened by the Pedi war of 1861-1879 thus annexing Transvaal.
- The Pedi war of 1861-1879 left Transvaal in a state of bankruptcy which forced the British to take over by annexing the Republic of Transvaal.
- Political instabilities in the areas also led the British to annex Transvaal Boer Republic.
- Transvaal was militarily weak and had even failed to end African rebellions. This encouraged the British to annex the Republic in 1877.
- The fear among the British that a strong state like the Zulu would attack the weakened Transvaal forced them to take over Transvaal.
- Transvaal's failure to suppress the local uprising of Africans forced the British to annex the Republic.
- The discovery of minerals in Transvaal forced the British to annex Transvaal in order to exploit the minerals.
- Rise of British imperialism championed by Lord Carnarvon made the annexation of Transvaal inevitable.
- The report of a British officer sir Theophilus Shepstone recommended the annexation of Transvaal in 1877.
- The earlier annexation of Basutoland encouraged the British to annex Transvaal.
- The British desire to unite all the whites in South Africa led to the annexation of Transvaal.
- The desire by the British to destroy Boer nationalism also emanated into the annexation of Transvaal in 1877.
- Pretorius' failure to establish a strong government in Transvaal forced the British to annex it.
- The unpopularity of Pretorius among the Boers created insecurity in Transvaal leading to the British take over in 1877.
- The mistreatment of Uitlanders by the Boers also made the annexation inevitable.

- The denial of Uitlanders to speak English and political rights caused the annexation of Transvaal.
- The strong need by the British to stop Boers' mistreatment of Africans caused the annexation of Transvaal.
- Transvaal was seeking links with other Europeans which annoyed the British hence the annexation of the Republic in 1877.

EFFECTS OF THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF TRANSVAAL

What were the effects of the British annexation of Transvaal?

- The Boers in Transvaal were defeated and humiliated by the British.
- Boers lost independence and incorporated into the British cape colony.
- The annexation increased hatred between the Boers and British in South Africa.
- It resulted into the first Anglo-Boer war, Jameson raid and 2nd Anglo-Boer war.
- It led to loss of Pedi's independence to the British.
- The annexation of Transvaal strengthened Boer nationalism.
- The annexation led to emergence of Paul Kruger and other Boer leaders.
- It increased cooperation between the Transvaal Boers and those of the Orange Free State.
- The annexation of Transvaal made the Boers to become more rebellious than ever before.
- The British controlled the biggest part of South Africa after the annexation of Transvaal.
- Afrikaner was to be one of the official languages in South Africa.
- The annexation led to the outbreak of wars like the Anglo-Pedi 1861-79 and Anglo-Zulu war 1879.
- It led to the British interference into the politics of the Zulu state.
- African leaders like Sekukuni and Ceteswayo lost their power and influence to the British.
- It led to loss of Pedi and Zulu independence to the Whites.
- The annexation led to destruction of property during the wars of annexation.
- Many Africans lost their lives during the Anglo-Zulu conflicts.
- It also led to the refusal of the Boers to pay taxes to the British.
- In the same way, the Boers stopped purchasing British goods in South Africa due to the annexation.

THE PEDI-RESISTANCE OF 1861-1879

- The Pedi tribe was found in the Eastern hills of Transvaal the Boer Republic.
- The Pedi fought against the Boers and later the British between 1861 and 1879.
- The Boers were led by Andres Pretorius whereas the Pedi by chief Sekukuni son of Sekwati.
- The British were led by Sir Garnet Wosely and Major Clerk.
- The location of the pedi in the Eastern Transvaal hills encouraged them to rebel against the Whites.

CAUSES OF THE PEDI RESISTANCE

What were the causes of the Pedi resistance between 1861 and 1879?

What led to the outbreak of the rebellion between Chief Sekukuni and the Whites between 1861 and 1879?

- The causes were both long-term and short-term. They were also political, social and economic.
- The white attacks on the Pedi state made Sekukuni to fight hence causing the resistance.
- The Boer expansion into the Pedi land was not welcomed by the Pedi leading to the conflict.
- The Pedi wanted to protect their independence from the Boers and British takeover hence a resistance.
- The refusal of the Pedi to accept Transvaal domination also caused the resistance.
- The Boers had support from the Swazi nation which encouraged them to attack the Pedi hence a rebellion.
- The presence of missionaries Sekwati had allowed in the Pedi state caused the war since they were suspected to be spies of the Boers.
- The Pedi's desire to preserve their cultures which the missionaries had condemned also led to the Pedi rebellion.
- The rumour that the Pedi had burnt the Germany missionary station also caused the uprising.
- The Pedi's chasing of the Missionaries i.e. Merensky from the missionary station did not please the Boers hence a rebellion.
- The need for the Boer leader of Transvaal to gain popularity drove him to attack the Pedi on 14th/July/1879.
- The Boer destruction of the Pedi settlement of Spekdom in 1876 made Africans to revenge hence the Pedi resistance.
- The White disrespect of the Pedi leader Sekukuni also led to the rebellion.
- The need by the Pedi to defend their land from the whites also caused the Pedi resistance.
- The long held suspicion and mistrust between the Pedi and the Boers caused the Pedi resistance.
- The British annexation of Transvaal in 1877 forced them to conflict with the Pedi.
- The British desire to create a federation of South Africa also made the Pedi resistance inevitable.
- The need by the British to please the Boers by donating them the Pedi land caused the war.
- The killing of Sekukuni's son called Moroamotshe by the whites annoyed the Pedi to react hence a rebellion.

EFFECTS OF THE PEDI RESISTANCE

How did the resistance affect the people of South Africa?

- The effects were both positive and negative.

- The resistance led to the defeat of the Pedi by the whites.
- The war forced Sekukuni to surrender to Major Clerk.
- The resistance led to the imprisonment of Sekukuni though he was released in 1881.
- The war led to the assassination of Sekukuni in 1882 by his rival brother.
- It resulted into loss of Pedi's independence to the British.
- It also led to the killing of other Pedi traditional leaders like Moroamotshe and Umsutu.
- It emanated into loss of lives of both the Africans and the Whites.
- It resulted into depopulation in the Pedi land due to massive killing of people.
- The resistance disrupted trade and agriculture since people concentrated in fighting.
- The war divided Africans i.e. the Swazi fought for the British against the Pedi.
- The war also resulted into the annexation of Transvaal in 1877 by the British.
- It resulted into displacement of people from their original homeland.
- The Pedi lost their land to the Boers and the Swazi.
- The resistance made the Transvaal president Burger unpopular in South Africa.
- Sekukuni was forced to sign a peace treaty with the Boers after the raid but he abused it.
- It caused poverty among the Africans because their property was destroyed.
- The resistance made the Transvaal Boer government bankrupt.

FACTORS/REASONS FOR THE DEFEAT OF THE PEDI

Why were the Africans defeated in the Pedi resistance?

- Many reasons /factors led to the defeat of the Pedi.
- The missionaries influenced many people not to join the resistance thus leading to the defeat of Africans.
- The military strength of the Whites also led to the defeat of the Africans.
- The Whites had powerful weapons like guns compared to Africans with inferior weapons like bows and arrows.
- The white men's determination to defeat the Pedi led to failure of the Africans.
- Disunity among the Pedi led to their defeat by the whites i.e. they fought in isolation.
- The Pedi had limited supply of weapons and fire arms compared to the whites.
- The Pedi lacked support from their neighbours leading to their defeat.
- The support given to the whites by the Swazi soldiers led to the defeat of the Africans.
- The arrest of Sekukuni demoralized the Pedi fighters leading to their defeat.
- The whites ruthlessly handled the Africans thereby weakening them.
- The Pedi were economically weak to the extent that they could not fight for so long.
- The Pedi lacked good leadership after the death of Sekukuni hence the defeat.

AFRIKANER NATIONALISM

- Nationalism refers to a strong love for one's country.
- It involves strong determination to fight hard and defend it.
- Afrikaner nationalism was there for Boer nationalism.
- The Boers after their strong stay in South Africa began calling themselves Afrikaners.

- They spoke language which was called Afrikaans and it was a mixture of African and Dutch language.
- Afrikaans nationalism was aimed at protecting Dutch/Boer culture, language and religion.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF AFRIKANER NATIONALISM

What factors led to growth of Afrikaans nationalism?

- The strong need for the Boers to preserve and protect their culture, language and religion that were being threatened by the British increased Afrikaans nationalism.
- The Boers hated the British domination of South African politics, land, Education and law leading to the rise nationalism.
- Afrikaans nationalism grew because the Boers thought that they were a superior race compared to other race e.g. Africans, Asians and British.
- The British act of granting non-whites racial equality which the Boers didn't like made the rise of Afrikaans nationalism inevitable.
- The development of Afrikaans language made the Boers unique and proud hence the rise of Afrikaans nationalism.
- The coming together of the Boer Republics e.g. Transvaal and Orange Free State increased Boer nationalism in South Africa.
- The Sand River and the Bloemfontein convention of 1852 granted the Boers equality with the British and promised them self-rule thus increasing Afrikaans nationalism.
- The British annexation of Griqualand at the neighbourhood of the Boers made them worried hence they had to rise up to protect their Diamond leading to the growth of nationalism.
- The need to protect the Boer economic wealth e.g. plantations, land etc. also led to rise of Afrikaans nationalism.
- The strong desire for the Boers to defend their independence from the British attack created a vacuum for the rise of Afrikaans nationalism.
- The spirit among the Boers to safeguard themselves against African hostile tribes e.g. the Zulu, Ndebele, Xhosa etc. led to the rise of Afrikaans nationalism.

STEPS TAKEN TO PROMOTE AFRIKANER NATIONALISM

State the steps taken to promote Afrikaans nationalism?

Describe the steps taken to promote Boer nationalism.

- The Boer trekkers began teaching the people about the advantage of using Afrikaans language.
- The Bloemfontein of 1852 brought the Boers together as the British promised them self-rule.
- In 1886, the Boers formed a political party i.e. Afrikaans Bond to defend their rights.
- The leader of the bond was S.J Dutoit.
- Membership of the bond was compulsory to all the Boers.
- The Boers also founded a newspaper known as De Zuid Afrikaan.
- S.J Dutoit was later depressed by Jan H. Hof Meyer.

- The chief editor of the paper was Jan.H.Holf Meyer.
- In 1875, S.J Dutoit formed the Afrikaner association called Decenoolskop.
- Another Boer official Van Roffei formed the association of the true Afrikaners.
- The work of this association was to promote the Boer language, one nation and unity.
- Another newspaper was founded which came to be known as Afrikaner patriot in 1876.
- S.J Dutiot published a number of books in the Afrikaner language.
- Copies of these books sold like hot cakes.
- The most popular of these books was the history of our country.
- The Boers also composed very many songs in Afrikaner language to enforce the struggle.

EFFECTS OF BOER NATIONALISM ON SOUTH AFRICAN COMMUNITIES

How did the Afrikaner nationalism affect the South Africans?

- It caused conflicts between different races i.e. Boers, Africans and the British.
- It led to the enslavement of Africans by the Boers.
- It marked the beginning of racism and apartheid in South Africa.
- Africans lost their cattle to the Boers and this led to poverty.
- The Ndebele were allowed to retain only seventy (70) heads of cattle per home.
- It led to outbreak of the Anglo-Boer wars of 1880-81 and 1899-1902.
- The British began to oppose the Boers for mistreating the blacks.
- It paved a way for the formation of the Federation for the White Republic by the British to contain the Boers.
- Afrikaner nationalism led to loss of African independence.
- It led to loss of African cultural identity.
- Newspapers were founded e.g. Dezuud Afrikaner, Afrikaner patriot etc.
- It led to formation of new political parties e.g. the Afrikaner Bond which defended the rights of the Boers.
- New books were published e.g. the “**History of our country.**”
- New songs were composed in Afrikaner language.
- It led to the growth of African nationalism as Africans rose up to defend themselves and also protect their independence.

Why did the Boers move closure (unite) after 1850?

What were the effects of Afrikaner nationalism?

THE GREAT MFEKANE PERIOD AND ITS AFTER-MATH

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

What was the Mfecane?

- The word Mfecane has been described variously by different communities.
- To the Nguni speakers, it was a **period or time of trouble or suffering.**
- While to the Sotho-Tswana speakers, it was called “**Difecane**” to mean a period of crushing, scattering and forced migration of communities across their lands (High veld)

- Others called it “**Lifecane**” still meaning a period of suffering and misery.
- This period is also commonly known as the **Nguni Revolution** of the 19th Century.
- There is no agreement among scholars on the exact time of the crisis, but it’s believed to have occurred in the first 30 years of the 19th century, particularly between 1800 and 1830.
- It took place among the Eastern Bantu tribes like the Zulu, Ndwandwe, Mthethwa, Ngwane (later Swazi), Tlokwa, Thembu, Hlubi and Khumalo.
- It involved the collapse of old empires and creation of new ones.
- The crisis started in Northern Zulu land (Modern Natal) and later spread to other Bantu tribes in Central Africa before spreading to parts of East Africa.
- It was partly caused by power hungry and war-like leaders like Dingiswayo, Zwide and Shaka.
- It reached its worst state during the time of Shaka, the king of the Zulu kingdom.

THE CAUSES OF THE MFECANE CRISIS

Why were there the 1800-1830 wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes of South Africa?

Why did the Eastern Bantu tribes fight each other between 1800 and 1830?

What were the causes of the great Mfecane period?

Why did the Bantu tribes conflict among themselves between 1800 and 1830?

Explain the causes of the Eastern Bantu tribe conflicts in South Africa.

What were the causes of Mfecane between 1800 and 1830?

- The causes of the Mfecane were both long term and immediate as shown below:
- The rise of power hungry and war-like leaders like Dingiswayo of the Mthethwa, Sobhuza 1 of the Ngwane (later Swazi) and Zwide of the Ndwandwe caused trouble.
- The desire to create large empires by the leaders caused wars and trouble in the region.
- The inter-tribal wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes like Mthethwa against Ndwandwe as well as Ngwane against Ndwandwe opened the gates for the first phase of the Mfecane period.
- The increased population of human beings in Natal or South East Africa caused land problem which led to the wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes.
- The increased slavery made many people to hate it and this led to the existence of many displaced people in the region hence mfecane.
- The competition among the different Bantu tribes for areas with favourable climate for human settlement and agriculture led to conflicts among Bantu tribes.
- The competition for areas with fertile soils that could favour farming also led to Mfecane wars.
- The struggle for grazing land as well as good pasture and water for animals in Natal caused the great Mfecane period.
- The competition and greed for cattle and other forms of wealth caused constant raids and counter raids which caused fights among the Bantu tribes.
- The stiff competition for the control over trade between the Europeans like the Portuguese at Delagoa Bay and the Africans led to more conflicts hence causing Mfecane.

- The presence of harsh natural conditions like drought caused famine and starvation hence increasing the struggle to overcome famine leading to Mfecane.
- The presence of desperate groups of refugees like the **Fingo** who could even resort to cannibalism increased trouble and suffering in the region.
- The meeting and friendship of Dingiswayo of Mthethwa with a European Doctor Robert Cowen who gave him a gun and a horse and also taught him how to use a gun caused wars.
- The expansion of the whites especially the Boers into Zulu land caused more pressure among the Bantu people which increased the conflicts.
- The killing of Dingiswayo and later Zwile increased fighting among the Bantu tribes in their areas so as to replace the above powerful leaders.
- The introduction of guns among Nguni tribes and the struggle for power among them also caused more conflicts.
- The rise of Shaka to power in Zulu land increased the Mfecane (trouble) in the region in the following ways;
- In the first place, his miserable childhood like being born out of a royal scandal since his father was not yet circumcised made him to be unwanted and regarded as an **illegitimate child** or **bastard** which gave him a unique character of having no feelings for the suffering people i.e. he was cruel.
- Shaka's early experience with Dingiswayo of the Mthethwa people made him to learn political and military skills which he later used to fight wars and this resulted into Mfecane.
- Shaka's military reforms and the desire to create large political units caused a lot of suffering to his people for example:
- Shaka introduced the idea of total war fare which increased fighting in Zulu land.
- The organisation of the army into age-regiments by Shaka made it more effective or stronger and therefore enabled it to fight many offensive and defensive wars.
- The encouragement of regular training of his force or military drills where the Zulu warriors were taught the values of discipline, fairness and patriotism to glorify Shaka increased wars.
- The introduction of new fighting weapons like the **short stabbing spears** and cowhide covered shields increased the morale of the soldiers to fight which caused more wars.
- The introduction of new fighting methods like the **“cow horn method”** and the use surprise attacks enabled Shaka's soldiers to easily defeat their enemies which increased wars.
- Shaka's expansionist policy forced him to attack his neighbours like the Ndwandwe thus leading to Mfecane. This was because Shaka was an aggressive person by nature.
- Shaka's dictatorship caused more suffering which also increased Mfecane.
- The harsh punishment given to the Zulu warriors who cowardised (refused to fight) like death penalty forced them to fight many wars which caused Mfecane.
- Shaka's absorption or assimilation policy of the non-Zulu people strengthened his kingdom which encouraged him to fight more wars.
- The military nature of the Zulu kingdom that was full of warriors or soldiers increased wars which worsened the Mfecane.

- The creation of special settlements or barracks by Shaka ensured accommodation of the Zulu warriors. This made them ready for war at any time hence increasing Mfecane.
- The creation of good stores or granary for each of military settlement as state policy by Shaka endured constant food supply and safety.
- The refusal of the soldiers by Shaka to marry until the age of 40 years made them available for military service at any time which also increased wars.
- The making of fighting or war a real professional job among the Zulu warriors by Shaka caused more wars as a means of survival also increased the Mfecane.
- The centralization of economic power by Shaka i.e. the king being the sole provider and controller of everything in the Zulu kingdom increased more wars in Zulu land.
- Shaka's policy of being the overall commander-in-chief of the army who led his warriors in the battle field gave them morale to fight and therefore they terrorized many tribes which increased trouble.
- Shaka's military intelligence and rare qualities like being war-like set the stage for the Mfecane period.
- The war booty like the virgin girls and cows that were usually captured increased the warriors' morale of fighting and this increased wars in the region.
- Shaka's attacks on the Tlokwa and Ngwato people caused the Mfecane. This is because the attacked people ran away and caused problems wherever they went.
- The death of **Nandi**, Shaka's mother in **1827** annoyed Shaka and made him to make a lot of irrational decisions. For example, he declared a year of national mourning and during this period, the mourners were refused to cultivate, have sex, and take pleasures like milk. This caused more suffering hence the Mfecane.
- There was also the killing of over 7,000 innocent Zulu people for failure to mourn adequately which caused more confusion leading to mfecane.
- The death of Shaka in 1828 robbed the kingdom one of its strongest kings. This gave rise to weak successors like Dingane and Mpande who got involved in power struggles that caused more trouble in Zulu land.

THE EFFECTS OF THE MFECANE

How did the Mfecane affect the people of South Africa during the 19th Century?

- Mfecane affected the people of South Africa both positively and negatively as shown below:
- It led to prolonged or constant wars between Zulu and their neighbours.
- There was great loss of lives in Zulu land and the neighbouring areas.
- The death of people during the Mfecane resulted into depopulation in Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Some leaders were killed during the Mfecane for example Dingiswayo, Zwide and later Shaka.
- Some weak tribes lost their land to powerful and organized kingdoms like Zulu state of Shaka, Mthethwa and Ndwandwe.

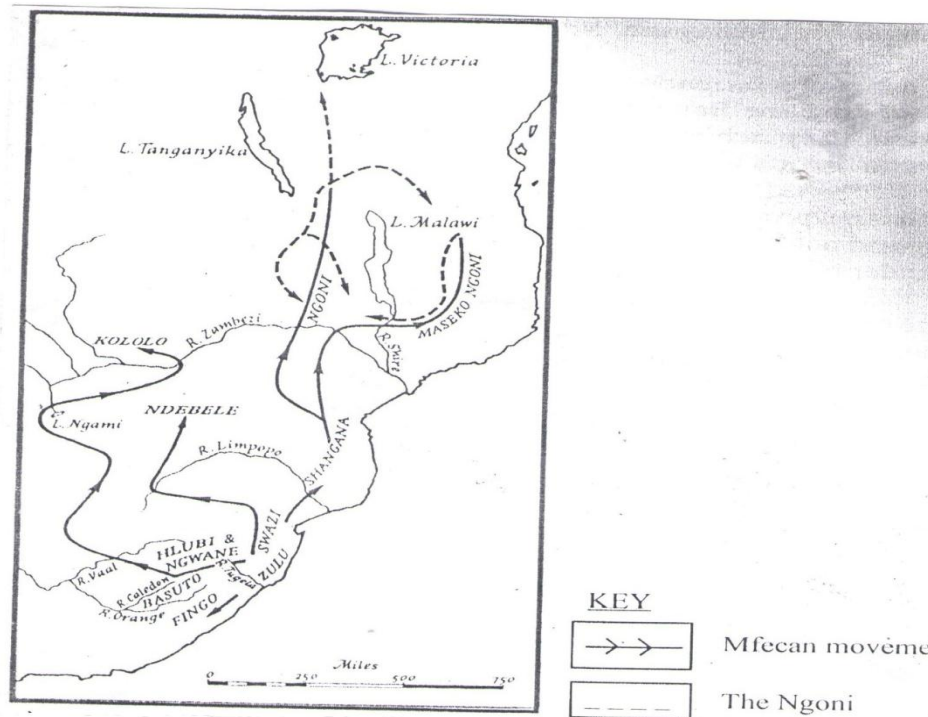
- There was displacement of many people from Zulu land as people were running away to safer areas like the Ngoni migration into East Africa and the Ndebele who moved to Central Africa.
- There was displacement of people who were forced into new lands and others became refugees.
- It created vacant land in Zulu that later attracted the Boers into the interior which contributed to Great Trek and subsequent colonization of South Africa.
- There was population redistribution of the Bantu in South African areas to which many people ran for safety and became over populated like Eastern Cape, Basuto land and Swaziland.
- It caused a lot of suffering and misery among people due to wars. For example, many people became refugees who kept on looking for survival like the Fingo.
- There was loss of property due to long periods of unrest and instability.
- There was breakdown of families as many people lost their family ties and were absorbed into Zulu culture.
- There was disruption or weakening of societies as many people were conquered and absorbed by the Zulu kingdom under Shaka.
- There was a decline in agriculture due to increased fighting as people could not settle down for cultivation which led to famine and this forced people to resort to cannibalism like the Fingo and Hlubi.
- Many societies lost their large herds of cattle due to constant raiding especially by the Zulu warriors.
- Trade at Delagoa Bay came to a standstill due to constant fighting thus causing acute poverty in the region.
- There was increased slave raiding due to the wars.
- It led to a period of fear, insecurity and tension that characterized many societies in the region.
- The insecurity caused by Mfecane forced people like the Basotho to concentrate and live in hilly areas that were safer.
- It led to rise of new and stronger states or kingdoms like the Zulu, the Basuto and the Swazi. Some of these were formed as defensive states against the expansion by their powerful neighbours.
- It led to the rise of new powerful and admirable leaders like Mosheshe of the Basuto, Sobhuza1 and Mswati of the Swazi, Shaka of the Zulu and Mzilikazi of the Ndebele among others who struggled to promote National unity among their people.
- There was establishment of standing armies by different societies so as to defend themselves against attacks.
- A new type of leadership emerged in South Africa and this was characterized by intelligent, brave and powerful leaders like Mosheshe, Sobhuza, Mswati etc. who could withstand the Mfecane period.
- It led to the introduction of new fighting tactics like the cowhorn method of attacks.
- It also resulted into the introduction of new military weapons like the short stubbing spears.
- The neighbouring chiefs lost their authority to powerful kingdoms like the Zulu under Shaka.

- It led to intermarriages of people who were speaking different languages thus leading to a common culture and unity.
- Due to the Mfecane, many societies were prepared to resist future European rule like the Xhosa, Zulu and Ndebele.

COURSE OF MFEKANE

- Mfecane began in the first half of the 19th century around Natal in Northern Nguni land.
- Shaka's wars of expansion forced weaker communities to migrate out of their original homeland.
- Most of them moved Northwards.
- Others took the Western direction and crossed Drakensburg Mountain areas.
- The **Ndebele** moved Northwards under the leadership of General **Mzilikazi**.
- As a result of the great trek, the Ndebele were again forced to move away after their defeat at Vegkop in 1836.
- They crossed River Limpopo and established a new Ndebele kingdom in present day Zimbabwe.
- This was after destroying the Shona settlements they found in the area.
- The **Kololo** were another group that moved away from South Africa under the leadership of **Sebitwane**.
- They moved Northwards towards Zimbabwe.
- They conquered the Lozi people and established **Makololo** dynasty in the area.
- Another group of people to leave South Africa were the **Ngoni**.
- The Ngoni moved Northwards in two major groups.
- The first and largest group was led by **Zwagendaba**.
- Zwagendaba's group moved out of South Africa through Central Africa and settled at Ufipa in Tanganyika.
- The second group of the Ngoni was led by **Maputo**.
- They were known as the Matseko Ngoni and they settled at Songea.
- Another group to leave South Africa were the **Shangane** under the leadership of **Shoshangane**.
- The Shangane moved Northwards and destroyed the weaker Tonga communities.
- They formed the **Gaza** Empire later in Central Africa.
- The **Quebe** also left South Africa under the leadership of **Ngweto**.
- They moved South-West and settled in **Pondo land**.
- The **Tlokwa** group under a woman leader **Manthantisi** moved and settled in High veld.
- Some of them settled in **Botswana**.
- The **Ngwane** under the leadership of **Sobhuza** moved North-Eastwards and founded the **Swazi** kingdom.
- The **Basuto/Sotho** led by **Mosheshe** founded the **Sotho state** in the Mountainous areas of **Butha-Buthe** and **Thaba-Bosiu**.

A SKATCH MAP SHOWING THE MOVEMENTS OF PEOPLE DURING MFECANE PERIOD



NATION BUILDING IN SOUTH AFRICA

DINGISWAYO THE WANDERER AND THE MTHETHWA STATE

- Dingiswayo was one of the Nguni chiefs who established large political units or chiefdoms in Northern Nguni land. He therefore was one of the greatest nation builders in South Africa.
- He was a son of **Jobe**, the Chief of the Mthethwa people.
- He was nicknamed the wanderer because he used to move from one state to another.
- Dingiswayo was an ambitious man who even planned to kill his father so as to gain early leadership of the Mthethwa and when his plan was discovered, he fled into the **Hlubi** mountains where he spent his youthful life.
- While in exile, he met a European Military Doctor known as **Robert Cowen** who became his friend. Robert Cowen taught him how to ride a horse and to use a gun.
- In **1797**, Dingiswayo returned home and deposed or overthrew his brother Mawawe and declared himself the king of the Mthethwa.
- Mawawe fled but was tricked to return and was later killed by Dingiswayo.

ACHIEVEMENTS OF DINGISWAYO

Describe the career and achievements of Dingiswayo.

How did Dingiswayo build and expand the Mthethwa state by 1817

- As a new king, Dingiswayo started by protecting his people against **Zwide** who was their greatest enemy. Zwide was the chief of the **Ndwandwe** people.
- He built a strong army known as **Ntanga** and divided this army into age regiments.
- Each regiment had its own set of defensive spears and shields provided by Dingiswayo.
- Initially, Dingiswayo's army was small in number comprising of about 500 soldiers but it later expanded.
- At first his army was not permanent but could easily be mobilized especially from the youths in case of war. However, it was later made permanent due to the increased wars in the region.
- He abolished initiation ceremonies like circumcision which would make his warriors to suffer full time.
- All the youths were supposed to join the regiments which were formed on age regiments and this encouraged tribal unity in his state.
- Through the regiments, he strengthened military efficiency (ability) and obedience to him since they fought together and shared common experiences.
- He expanded the Mthethwa state over 200 miles, defeated his neighbours and made them his subjects.
- Dingiswayo absorbed the conquered tribes and even recruited them into his army. These were used to defend his kingdom.
- The conquered tribes also paid tributes to Dingiswayo which helped him to build a strong economy.
- He gave back captured cattle and other forms of wealth to the conquered people and he allowed them to retain their chiefs as long as they remained loyal to him. For example, **Senzagakona** remained the chief of the Zulu people.
- He also created social unity by marrying from different clans.
- Dingiswayo created friendship with the whites at Delagoa Bay where he was able to acquire more guns which he used against his neighbours.
- Dingiswayo always promoted his people on merit and talent. For example, Shaka was promoted as a regimental or military commander because he proved to be courageous and intelligent.
- He abolished the practice of traditional leaders commanding the army and he appointed his own men to do that.
- He relied on the advice of both the traditional leaders and military indunas or commanders to build his kingdom.
- He introduced wooden shields as well as wooden shoes for his soldiers.
- Economically, Dingiswayo encouraged trade with the Europeans. He imported European goods and encouraged his people to copy them.
- He also developed the skin and hides industry which made his kingdom economically stronger.
- Dingiswayo laid a foundation for the establishment of the Zulu kingdom by preparing Shaka for the future leadership of the Zulu people.
- Dingiswayo was killed in **1818** by Chief Zwide's soldiers and his skull was taken to decorate the hut of Zwide's mother.
- By the time of his death, Dingiswayo had greatly expanded the Mthethwa into a large and powerful chiefdom.

Explain Dingiswayo's achievements towards the Mthethwa state.

THE COLLAPSE OF THE MTHETHWA STATE

- The civil wars between the royal family after the murder of his brother Mawawe who was the true successor to the throne created enmity and this weakened the state hence the collapse.
- There was internal disunity because the state had several tribes and this left the state weak leading to its collapse.
- Dingiswayo faced internal opposition from his brothers like Mawawe.
- He faced a problem of indisciplined warriors who wanted to take over power like Shaka.
- Dingiswayo also lacked a council or parliament to advise him and mostly depended on the traditional leaders and military commanders for advice.
- Dingiswayo over trusted Shaka who betrayed him at the last hour.
- Endless wars between Mthethwa and neighbours weakened the state.
- The economy of the Mthethwa was destroyed due to wars and this made people to starve leading to collapse of the state.
- The use of inferior weapons i.e. long throwing spears became out dated after the invention of Assegai (short –stubby spears).
- Dingiswayo's soldiers used bulky wooden sandals which inconvenienced their movements.
- The big wooden shields used by Dingiswayo's officers undermined the mobility of his warriors.
- Small states started breaking away from the bigger Mthethwa due to much freedom.
- External attacks especially by Zwide of the Ndwandwe weakened the kingdom.
- The great increase in population due to open absorption caused competition and struggle for land leading to endless wars which weakened the state.
- Dingiswayo failed to ensure discipline and loyalty of his warriors.
- The death of Dingiswayo robbed the Mthethwa of a powerful and potential leader hence the collapse of the state.
- The rise of Shaka strengthened the Zulu over the Mthethwa state hence a decline.

THE RISE OF SHAKA AND ZULU NATION (1783 – 1828)

THE ORIGIN OF THE ZULU STATE /KINGDOM

- Little is known about the origin of the Zulu nation.
- However, it is believed that it was started by the Bantu speaking people in the Eastern coastal areas of South Africa i.e. the modern Natal Province.
- The Zulu kingdom started as a small chiefdom probably under chief Senzangakona in the early 1700s.
- The Zulu kingdom started to change in the time when Shaka took over leadership from his brother **Segujana** who had succeeded their father.
- Shaka was born in **1783**. His father was **Senzangakona** a chief of the small Zulu chiefdom and his mother was called **Nandi**.

- Shaka was born when his father was not circumcised hence he was rejected by the royal family.
- He was therefore considered a **bastard** and **illegitimate**. He was thus brought up by his mother and maternal uncles.
- Shaka had a miserable and unhappy childhood and was always harassed by his play mates because of his background.
- Shaka later grew to become a strong, courageous and determined man with a burning desire to revenge his humiliating or shameful background.
- During his youthful days, he joined Dingiswayo's army hence marking the start of his career as a soldier.
- In the army, he distinguished himself as a determined and intelligent soldier who was energetic, adventurous as well as brave hence making himself popular in the army.
- Due to this, Dingiswayo promoted him to become one of his military commanders.
- In Dingiswayo's army, Shaka introduced several reforms like Assegai (short stabbing spears), fighting barefooted and cow-horn formation.
- In **1816**, Shaka's father died and was succeeded by Shaka's brother called **Segujane**.
- With the help of his mentor-chief Dingiswayo of the Mthethwa, Shaka attacked his father's chiefdom and killed his brother. This left the Zulu chiefdom entirely in the hands of Shaka.
- In 1818, Dingiswayo was killed by Zwide's warriors and Shaka took over the Mthethwa chiefdom and added it to the Zulu chiefdom after killing Dingiswayo's successor.
- Shaka fought and defeated the Ndwandwe under chief Zwide and took control of the Ndwandwe.
- Thereafter, Shaka conquered and assimilated a number of people into the Zulu community.
- He created a kingdom out of war which was located between the Drakensberg Mountains in the West the Indian Ocean in the East, the Pongole River in the North and Tugela River in the South.
- He created a very large kingdom that covered 200,000 square miles and put in place a much organized political system.
- In short therefore, Shaka was the founder of the Zulu kingdom in the first half of the 19th century.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF THE ZULU STATE/SHAKA

- Little is known about the origin of the Zulu state but certainly the kingdom was founded by Shaka around 1818.
- It was founded in the modern Natal province among the Northern Nguni or Bantu speaking people.
- It started as a small chiefdom of 24 square miles under chief Senzangakona.
- Shaka the key figure in this foundation was born around 1783. His father was Senzangakona and his mother was Nandi.
- The strategic location of Zulu in Natal province with access to the Indian Ocean helped the leaders to acquire guns which they used to conquer small states hence its rise.

- Natal also had fertile soils that enabled them to grow enough food hence ensuring food security in the area.
- The favourable climatic with enough rainfall in the region attracted many Bantu settlers in the area because it was suitable for agriculture.
- The Zulu state was free from pests and diseases like malaria.
- The Zulu state was surrounded by weak neighbours like the Mthethwa and Ndwandwe and therefore they were not a threat to the rise of the Zulu kingdom.
- The Zulu kingdom had a strong economy of mixed farming whereby they grew crops such as millet, pumpkins, and also kept animals like cattle, goats and sheep which supported the kingdom for a long time.
- There was population explosion and land pressure in the area which caused wars of expansion.
- The presence of good and determined leaders like Shaka who was determined to build the state led to the establishment of the Zulu state.
- The centralized system of government promoted law and order as well as effective control in the Zulu state.
- Shaka's joining of Dingiswayo's army enabled him to acquire military and leadership skills which he later used to create the Zulu state.
- The death of Dingiswayo in 1818 gave chance to Shaka to conquer the Mthethwa chiefdom which he annexed to the Zulu state so as to form a stronger kingdom.
- The occurrence of the Mfecane period that made people to run away led to the rise of the Zulu state as it left Zulu as the only stronger state in the area.
- The over centralization of power by Shaka gave him an assured source of revenue for the kingdom.
- Trade with Europeans at Delagoa Bay gave an assured source of revenue for the kingdom.
- The unity in the kingdom that was created through age regimental system, uniform language and culture led to the rise of a strong Zulu kingdom.
- The presence of a strong standing army that was used to expand and protect the kingdom against external attacks alas led to the rise of the Zulu state.
- The introduction of changes such as total warfare, fighting bare footed and marrying at 40 years resulted into the growth of the Zulu state.

SHAKA'S ADMINISTRATIVE AND MILITARY REFORMS/CHANGES/ACHIEVEMENTS

Explain the reforms introduced by Shaka in Zulu kingdom.

How was Shaka able to build and maintain a strong Zulu state?

How did the Shaka's reforms transform the Zulu kingdom?

Explain the methods used by Shaka to create the Zulu state up to 1828.

- Shaka created and maintained a powerful Zulu state using a number of reforms which include the following;
- He created a strong standing army that was made up of full time professional soldiers that were ready for war any time.
- He introduced short stabbing spears known as **Assegai** which were more portable and effective compared to the traditional long throwing spears.

- Shaka divided his army into fighting groups known as **Impis**.
- He introduced age-regiments where boys of the same age were supposed to belong and train together.
- He appointed military commanders called Induna to be in charge of each military regiment.
- The Indunas (military commanders) were not supposed to organize any meeting without being permitted by Shaka.
- He abolished putting on the heavy wooden sandals because they reduced the speed of the fighters.
- Shaka introduced hard military training programmes for the soldiers to master the new methods of fighting e.g. he trained the soldiers to fight bare footed.
- He maintained a high degree of discipline among his soldiers.
- He introduced the **cow horn method** of fighting. By this, the enemy would be encircled and destroyed easily.
- Shaka abolished traditional customs like circumcision because it took a lot of time and weakened his soldiers.
- He forced his soldiers to live in special fighting camps known as barracks under appointed Indunas.
- Shaka introduced women regiment warriors in his army. These would sometimes go for war and they also worked in gardens.
- Shaka extended the marriage period for soldiers up to 40 years and the soldiers had to first retire from the actual military service before marriage.
- Shaka employed boy scouts to carry the weapons of the soldiers and this helped the soldiers to be fresh during fighting.
- He formed a reserve army that was composed of retired soldiers and this made the kingdom to be strong all the time.
- Medicine men were always present to take care or treat the wounded soldiers. This kept his army in good conditions all the time.
- Shaka introduced the assimilation policy where the conquered young men were absorbed into Shaka's army which strengthened the Zulu army.
- Shaka employed women relatives to act as spies in the barracks in order to check on any other rebellion.
- He introduced the idea of total warfare (scorched earth policy). This exposed the enemies to lack of food hence weakening them.
- He also employed religion as an instrument of unity and nation building. He was the chief priest and therefore he presided over all the traditional ceremonies in the Zulu kingdom.
- Shaka imposed the Zulu language and culture on the conquered people and they came to be known as the "**Amazulu**".
- Economically, Shaka centralized the economy and he put it in his hands especially trade and war booty.
- Shaka used dictatorship to create fear among his people i.e. he centralized all the political power in hands which helped him to maintain the state.
- He also made administrative reforms e.g. he replaced the old traditional rulers with his military commanders known as **Indunas**.

- In his private life, Shaka never produced any child for fear of turning against him. He never loved women and even killed the pregnant women.
- Shaka replaced the chiefs of the conquered states with his own chiefs that he appointed and therefore the rulers in those states lost their power.
- In short therefore, using the above reforms by the first half of the 19th century, Shaka had transformed the Zulu chiefdom into a strong state.
- However, on the **24th December 1828**, Shaka was assassinated by his brother **Dingane** and left behind a very large empire or kingdom eventually.

PROBLEMS FACED BY SHAKA

- There was absence of tribal unity in the Zulu nation which weakened the empire.
- The conquered people kept on demanding for their independence from Shaka.
- Shaka lost some of his able commanders e.g. Zwagendaba, Mzilikazi etc.
- His rule was full of endless wars which led to suffering of the Zulu people.
- Shaka faced strong enmity from the neighbours e.g. the Mthethwa, Swazi, Ndwandwe etc.
- His army became tired of endless wars.
- The vastness of his empire made effective administration difficult.
- The death of his mother (Nandi) greatly upset him.
- He imposed intolerable suffering on his people to mourn for the death of the Queen mother.
- Shaka imposed a mourning period of almost one year in which 7000 people were killed for not mourning adequately as he expected.
- He never allowed his people to drink milk, play sex, cultivation etc.
- He faced competition from his brothers e.g. Dingane, who wanted to take over power.
- He was betrayed by some Indudians (military commanders) like Chief Mlohopa who allied with his brothers to kill him in 1828.
- Shaka grew up in a state of poverty.
- He lost land to the whites i.e. gave much of Natal to an English trader known as **Frere**.
- The penetration of the whites in the Zulu state threatened his rule which later led to the decline of the Zulu state.
- There was severe famine as a result of endless wars with the neighbours.
- He faced a challenge of the rise of other stronger leaders e.g. Mzilikazi, Sobhuza, Mosheshe etc.
- His dictatorship caused Mfecane which was a period of trouble in South Africa.
- He was killed by his brothers Dingane and Mhlangane in 1828.

ORGANISATION OF THE ZULU STATE

Describe the way of life of the Zulu in the 19th century.

- The Zulu state was created in 1817 as result of one man called Shaka.
- The organization of the state was entirely the personal effort of Shaka until his death in 1828.

- The kingdom was organized politically, socially and economically.
- **Politically**, the Zulu state was centralized under one king i.e. Shaka.
- The king was the center of power, chief justice, commander in chief of the army, the chief priest and the giver of wealth.
- There was an advisory council which advised the king on important matters of the state and to check on the king's powers.
- Shaka replaced traditional rulers with military commanders (indunas) into positions of respect and people were expected to respect the Indunas more than the chiefs.
- The Indunas were everywhere in the state and Shaka's female relatives were married to prominent Indunas and these acted as spies.
- The indunas had to be loyal to the king who alone had powers to appoint, dismiss or even kill them.
- The conquered people were forced to adopt the Zulu culture and had to be loyal to the King.
- The Zulu had regiments and barracks like Bulwayo, Bukuza etc. which comprised of the youth of different age groups.
- The Zulu had a strong army called **Impis** which helped to defend the state.
- The Zulu soldiers were supposed to offer military services to the zulu state until the age of 40years.
- Succession to the throne was hereditary i.e. one of the old sons of the chief/king had to take over power after the death of the father in order to avoid succession disputes.
- **Economically**, the Zulu carried out agriculture and grew crops like pumpkins, maize, millet etc.
- The Zulu carried out agriculture and grew crops like pumpkins, maize, millet etc.
- Trade was promoted during the reign of Shaka and the Zulu traded in fire arms with Natal.
- The Zulu exchanged ivory, hides and skins with the Europeans for goods like glass ware, guns etc.
- The Zulu carried out iron smelting and produced tools like spears, arrows, knives etc.
- They carried out fishing especially those who lived near water bodies e.g. River Vaal, River Orange, River Fish etc.
- They carried out hunting in order to get ivory, wild meat, which supplemented their diet and ivory was sold to the Europeans.
- The Zulu carried out mining i.e. they began mining on small scale before the coming of the Europeans and such minerals included gold, tin, diamonds etc.
- The Zulu carried out pastoralism i.e. kept cattle which provided them with milk, butter and hides.
- They also used cattle to pay dowry/bride price.
- They also collected tribute from the conquered states which increased revenue.
- **Socially**, the society was dominated by war fare and there were age regiments which were centers of socialization.
- The Zulu believed in God the creator of everything and the giver of everything.
- They also believed in small gods and offered sacrifices in form of animals like cattle, goats, sheep etc.
- The Zulu also believed in witchcraft i.e. they had magic powers.
- The warriors only married at the age of 40 after active military service.

- The young girls and women captives worked in the agricultural fields while men offered military service.
- The old and aged were always killed because they were regarded least important in the community.
- The Zulu believed in royal regalia and recognized the importance of drums, spears, as royal symbols.
- Marriages were conducted in order to promote unity in the society. Members of the same clan were not supposed to marry each other but marriage across clans was allowed.
- Polygamy was very common among the Zulu i.e. they married as many wives as possible.
- The Zulu society was divided into the royal family (the privileged) and the commoners known as “Amazulu”

THE ZULU STATE AFTER SHAKA

- Shaka, the founder of the Zulu Kingdom was assassinated in **1828** by his brothers **Dingane** and **Mhlangana** with the help of Shaka’s chief Induna.
- Shaka was killed while his warriors had gone to raid the neighbours. He was therefore succeeded by Dingane.

THE REIGN OF DINGANE

Describe the achievements of Dingane for the Zulu Kingdom between 1828 and 1840.

- Dingane was a son to Senzangakona and a brother to Shaka.
- He ruled the Zulu state from 1828 to 1840 after killing his brother Shaka on 24th/09/1828.
- Dingane was helped by his brother Mhlangane and the chief Induna Mbhopa to kill Shaka.
- Dingane later turned against his brother i.e. killed Mhlangane, Mbhopa and became the full ruler of the Zulu state.
- He was by nature a lazy and peace-loving man.
- He relaxed the military discipline of Shaka’s periods.
- He tried to please his people by relaxing the severe discipline Shaka had imposed on the regiments.
- Dingane freed warriors from regiments and allowed the soldiers to marry earlier than during Shaka’s time.
- He also put military expeditions to an end which were common during Shaka’s time.
- It was because of military weakness that Quebe people under their chief Nqueto had to break away and become independent.
- It was therefore a short period of time and later severe discipline was imposed once again to keep the army busy.
- He attacked the Pondo, Ndebele under Mzilikazi and Ngwane under Sobhuza and captured more cattle.

- He attacked the Portuguese and killed some of them.
- It was during his reign that the Boer trekkers under Piet Retief reached the Zulu kingdom.
- In February 1838, Dingane ordered the murder of Piet Retief on a beer party leading to the Boer revenge in December 1838.
- Dingane was overthrown by his brother Mpande who allied with the Boers against Dingane.
- He escaped to Swaziland where he was eventually murdered by the Swazi king.
- He achieved little for the Zulu people because he faced internal and external pressure.
- He gave more land to the whites i.e. the British and the Boers.
- He signed a treaty with an English officer Gardiner whom he gave land in Natal.
- In 1840, the Zulu royal family overthrew Dingane and crowned his brother Mpande as the new king of the Zulu state.

PROBLEMS FACED BY DINGANE

- Dingane was a weak leader and this explains why he failed to bring about unity among the Zulu people.
- He had a very weak army because he relaxed the military discipline of Shaka.
- He lost bigger chunks of land to the whites.
- Dingane signed a bogus treaty giving Natal to the Boers in 1838.
- He also gave land to an English officer Gardiner in Natal.
- The Boer trekkers under Piet Retief became a threat to his rule i.e. Piet Retief demanded land from Dingane.
- There was disunity among the tribal groups in Zulu land.
- He also lost cattle to the whites.
- He killed Piet Retief which caused him conflicts with the Boers hence his defeat.
- Some states which had been conquered started breaking away e.g. Quebe and this weakened the State.
- Dingane lacked support from the royal family because he killed his brother Mlangane.
- The traditional rulers started encouraging warriors to cross to Mpande's side which weakened him.
- His peaceful ways brought about hatred from military warriors.
- He was hated by his neighbours i.e. the Swazi because of his earlier attacks on the Swazi.
- The Boers were determined to occupy Natal with or without Dingane's permission.
- In 1840, Dingane was overthrown by the Royal family and his brother Mpande was crowned as a new king of the Zulu state.

THE REIGN OF MPANDE

Describe the career and importance of Mpande in the Zulu state.

Describe the contribution of Mpande to the history of South Africa.

- Mpande was a son of Senzangakona and thus a brother of Shaka and Dingane.
- He ruled the Zulu state from 1840-1872 i.e. he controlled the Zulu state for 32 years.
- He had a dull youthful time until Dingane started messing up the Zulu state.
- He collaborated with Boers after the defeat of Dingane at the Blood River Battle in 1838 and carried out a civil war against him (Dingane).
- During his regime, there was a big improvement in the Zulu relationship with the whites especially the Boers because they assisted him to rise in power and therefore this prevented wars between the two groups for some time.
- Mpande as a new king failed to bring back the Zulu military glory that had been created by Shaka and therefore he was considered to be a weak leader and hated by the Zulu youths.
- He was even hated more than Dingane because he feared going for wars and this made the warriors idle and redundant.
- Just like Dingane, he also enjoyed feasting and being carried around the cart than performing government duties.
- The peace during his rule increased the Zulu's population due to the return of the refugees.
- However, with increase of people, there was no room for further expansion.
- Mpande's peaceful ways made the Boers to start interfering in the Zulu politics.
- He even gave the Boers the Blood River territory for helping him to overthrow Dingane in 1840, hence weakening the Zulu kingdom.
- Mpande failed to revive the age regiments and this made his sons to long for his death.
- His two eldest sons **Cetewayo** and **Mbulazi** started fighting for the throne even before their father's death.
- In 1856, Cetewayo defeated his brother and even killed him. He therefore waited to take over power once his father dies.
- Mpande eventually died in **1872** and he was succeeded by his son Cetewayo.

PROBLEMS FACED BY MPANDE

- Mpande had a lot of pressure from the Boers who demanded for half of the Zulu fertile land for their settlement and this brought about conflicts between the Boers and the Zulu people.
- His character was a problem. Just like Dingane, Mpande was not a serious leader and he preferred, women, dancing and feasting to state duties which greatly weakened the Zulu Kingdom.
- Mpande failed to control the civil wars between his two eldest sons Cetewayo and Mbulazi which divided the Zulu royal family and the ordinary people hence weakening the Zulu kingdom.
- The British citizens in Zulu land especially Natal also started demanding for more land for their settlement and this was not welcomed by the Zulu people.
- The increased population in Zulu land resulted into land shortage and yet the whites kept on asking for more land.
- Mpande lacked support from the Zulu people because of his peaceful character and this earned him a lot of hatred as he was considered to be a weak leader.

- He encouraged Boer interference into Zulu politics, thus dividing up the state and the royal family because some Zulu people did not support his association with Boers thus weakening the state.
- He gave the Boers half of the fertile land in Zulu land i.e. the Blood River territory. This made his people to hate him because he had made them landless.
- He neglected the military regiments left by Shaka which annoyed the Zulu warriors or soldiers. This was because he did not want to go for wars especially with the whites.
- He failed to arm the Zulu army with stronger weapons which also annoyed the Zulu warriors.
- There was also the rise of British imperialism during his rule as the British officers like **Sir Theophilus Shepstone** picked interest in the Zulu affairs.

WHY DINGANE WAS DEFEATED BY HIS BROTHER MPANDE

- Mpande got support from the Boers and this helped him to defeat Dingane.
- He failed to maintain tribal unity in the kingdom hence a defeat.
- The local rulers started inciting warriors to run to Mpande's side.
- His hatred for wars was unpopular among the warlike Zulu soldiers.
- His relaxation of military discipline and disbanding some of the age regiments made him to be defeated by his brother.
- His failure to convince Gardiner to return all the Zulu refugees also led to his defeat.
- His brutal rule made him another Shaka leading to his defeat.
- His preference for feasting, dancing and women made him unpopular leading to his defeat by Mpande.
- The royal family stopped supporting him in 1840 in favour of Mpande.
- Mpande's collaboration with the Boers led to the eventual defeat of Dingane.
- The increasing scarcity of land as he gave away more land to the whites annoyed the people.

THE REIGN OF CETEWAYO

Discuss the achievements of Cetewayo for the Zulu people.

- Cetewayo was the son of Mpande.
- He was intelligent and ambitious like his uncle Shaka.
- He started gaining popularity and importance in 1856 after defeating his brother Mbulazi at the battle of Magongo.
- He began being active politically from 1856.
- When his father died in 1872, he became the leader of the Zulu state.
- The British officer Theophilus Shepstone officially crowned him in 1872.
- His first priority was to re-organise the Zulu state militarily.
- He was determined to change Mpande's peaceful policy.
- He concentrated on reforming the age regiments and increased the spirit of nationalism.
- He made diplomatic contacts with the Portuguese and got fire arms.
- In the first years, he avoided wars with the Boers and the British.

- He also created peace within the Zulu land by being a good ruler.
- Later, he started encouraging raids against the neighbours to make the Zulu warriors active.
- He also encouraged trade with the whites especially the Portuguese in Mozambique thus getting guns.
- Cetewayo managed to keep the independence of the Zulu nation between 1872 and 1879.
- In 1879, Cetewayo defeated the British at the battle of Isandlwana in January 1879.
- The British later defeated Cetewayo at the battle of Ulundi in July 1879.
- Cetewayo was exiled to London in 1882.
- Later, the British were forced to return him as the ruler but with limited powers given to him.
- Cetewayo became annoyed and decided to seek refuge in a reserve where he died from in 1884.
- He was succeeded by his son Dinizulu who was a British puppet.

PROBLEMS FACED BY CETEWAYO

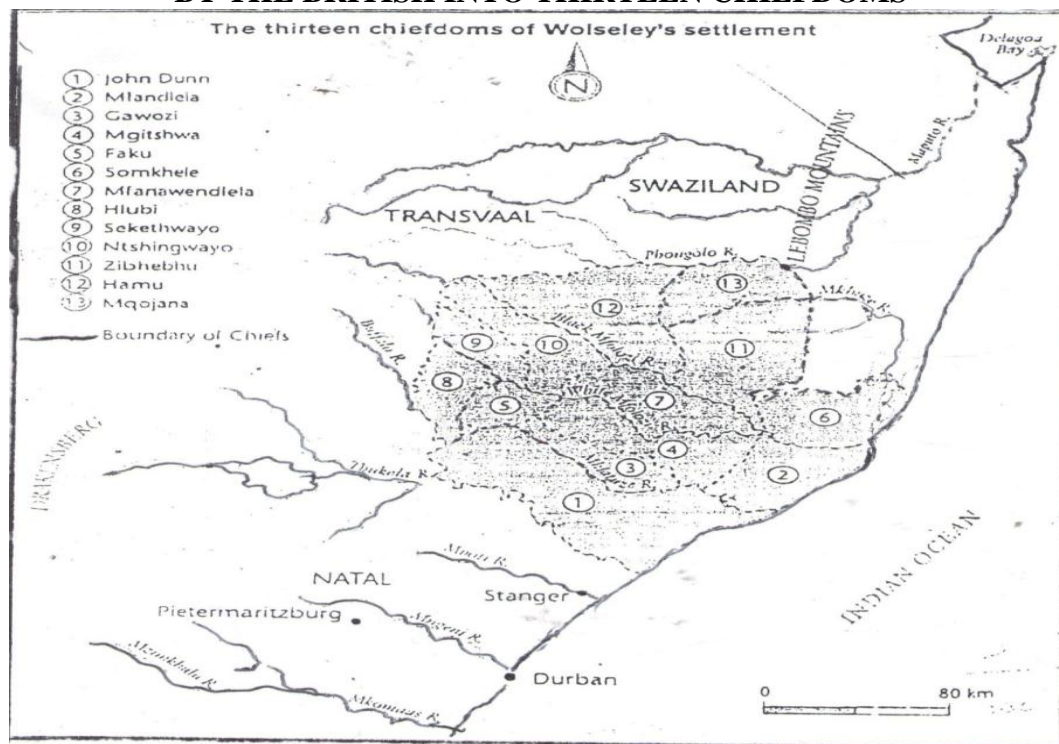
Describe the problems faced by Cetewayo by 1879.

- The civil wars between him and his brother Mbulazi weakened him and the Zulu state.
- The British forced him into exile where he died a very miserable man.
- He had very little time to solve the problems within the Zulu state as a result of the forty years of misrule.
- He faced a task from the British especially in 1879 at the battle of Isandlwana and later at Ulundi.
- The British sent him into exile after his defeat at Ulundi though was returned on the Zulu demands.
- The Zulu army and regiments were no longer functioning and this weakened him militarily.
- The army was equipped with mainly spears yet his enemies had guns.
- Sir Bartle Frere kept on fooling him over the Blood River territory that he would help him against the Boers and in future he sided with them against the Zulu.
- He ruled at a wrong time i.e. the period of scramble for and partition of South Africa.
- His defeat at Ulundi marked the end of his short career as a king and later his kingdom was divided up into thirteen (13) chiefdoms.
- The Zulu population had greatly increased and yet land was small to accommodate the Zulu people.
- His people were killed in the great battles and a lot of property was destroyed.
- The Boer expansion from the North and South threatened him politically.
- He had a poor relationship with the British officer Bartle Frere who was determined to destroy his state.
- The need by the British to implement the Federation scheme in South African Zulu land caused conflicts between him and the British.
- Cetewayo fled to a reserve where he died in 1884 and he was succeeded by his son called **Dinizulu**.

HOW THE ABOVE PROBLEMS WERE SOLVED BY CETEWAYO

- He reformed the age regiments and created a strong standing army that had died during Mpande's time.
- He raised a big force for defensive purposes and revived the Zulu militarism and imparted courage among his warriors.
- He brought back the Zulu self-confidence and a spirit of nationalism that had been created by Shaka.
- He also brought back the Zulu military tactics like the cow-horn formation as well as surprise attacks.
- He made the Zulu more aggressive and he held two coronation ceremonies to please the whites and traditionalists.
- He befriended the British in order to defeat the Boers and he reversed Mpande's peaceful policies.
- He used the British to solve his misunderstandings with the Boers in the Blood River territory.
- He acquired guns from Mozambique and encouraged trade with the Portuguese there.
- He even defeated the British forces at Isandhlwana in January 1879 and captured all their guns. This delayed their federation plans.
- He sought refuge in a reserve after losing the support of his people.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE PARTITION OF THE ZULU KINGDOM BY THE BRITISH INTO THIRTEEN CHIEFDOMS



THE COLLAPSE OF THE ZULU STATE

What factors led to the downfall of the Zulu state by the end of the 19th Century.

What factors led to the disintegration of the Zulu kingdom in the second half of the 19th century?

Why did the Zulu kingdom decline in the second half of the 19th century?

- The Zulu kingdom collapsed in **1879** after the British defeat at **Ulundi**.
- The decline of this state was a long term process dating back from Shaka's days. This was due to the following factors;
- Shaka's dictatorship made him unpopular which led to the downfall of the Zulu state.
- The Mfecane and its negative effects caused a lot of misery and suffering which weakened the Zulu state.
- The death of Shaka's mother (Nandi) created conflicts in the Zulu state which made Shaka become unpopular leading to the decline of the State.
- Shaka's brutality forced many of his capable commanders to run away like Maputo, Zwangendaba and Mzilikazi.
- The death of Shaka in 1828 robbed the Zulu state of its great ruler who would have defended the kingdom against the foreign invaders.
- The rise of weak leaders like Mpande and Dingane i.e. they were militarily weak and therefore they failed to manage the kingdom properly leading to its decline.
- Succession disputes after the death of Shaka i.e. between Dingane and Mhlangane weakened the state.
- The Boer expansion into the interior of South Africa (Zulu land) led to the downfall of the Zulu state.
- The collaboration and friendship of some Zulu leaders with the Europeans like Mpande with the Boers brought the foreigners into the Zulu politics which led to its decline.
- The discovery of minerals in South Africa such as Gold and Diamond led to the migration of the Zulu youths to the mining areas and this weakened the regiments, hence leading to the Zulu state
- The defeat of the Zulu by the Boers at the battle of Blood River weakened them leading to the collapse of the kingdom.
- The British annexation of Natal in 1843 weakened the Zulu state.
- The breaking away of the vessel (conquered) states e.g. Sotho and Ngwane led to the collapse of the Zulu state.
- Epidemics like rinder pest, Zambezi fever etc. weakened the Zulu economy.
- Famine and drought weakened the Zulu state leading to collapse.
- The missionary interference divided the Zulu state hence weakening the Nation.
- The great increase in population especially during the reign of Cetewayo led to land conflicts which weakened the empire.
- Poverty due to increased famine caused misery and suffering which led to the collapse of the state.
- The period of scramble for and partition of South Africa attracted more Europeans into Zulu land.
- The defeat of Cetewayo at the battle of Ulundi 1879 marked the end of the Zulu state.

- The vastness of the Zulu empire became a liability to be administered by weak leaders hence the collapse of the state.
- Cetewayo's killing of the White missionaries alarmed the British which led to the collapse of the Zulu state.
- The Zulu state had bitter relations with the neighbours that led to endless wars which forced the neighbours to support the Zulu enemies. For example, the Swazi supported the British against the Zulu kingdom in **1879** which made it easy for the British to defeat the Zulu.
- The division of the Zulu state into 13 districts by the British weakened the Zulu kingdom and therefore led to its final collapse.

THE ZULU RESPONSE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF BRITISH COLONIALISM

THE ANGLO-ZULU WAR OF 1879/THE ISANDHALWANA WAR

- The war took place between the Zulu and the British in 1879 and it was fought in two battles.
- It is also known as the conflict between **Ceteswayo** and **Sir Bartle Frere**.
- The first battle was the **Battle of Isandhlwana** in **January 1879**, followed by the one of **Ulundi** in **July 1879** where the Zulu were defeated.
- The Zulu were led by **Cetewayo** and the British by **Sir Bartle Frere**, the British High Commissioner or Cape Governor.
- It is also called the battle of Ulundi on which the Zulu were finally defeated in July 1879.

CAUSES OF THE ANGLO-ZULU WAR OF 1879

What were the causes of Anglo-Zulu conflict of 1879?

- The determination of Catewayo to revive the military culture and glory of the Zulu that had been lost by Mpande's peaceful policy caused the war.
- Cetewayo's revival of Shaka's military tactics and age regiments strengthened the Zulu army which threatened the British position hence forcing them to attack the Zulu in 1879.
- The failure of Cetewayo to disarm and disband the army of about 35,000 men threatened the British and therefore, they decided to declare war on the Zulu in 1879.
- The refusal of Cetewayo to ban age regiments and the army of about 35,000 soldiers as demanded by the British caused the war in 1879.
- The character of Cetewayo and Sir Bartle Frere i.e. were uncompromising and never respected peaceful means to settle conflicts which caused the Anglo-Zulu war in 1879.
- Catewayo had built army of 35000 men which motivated him to fight the British.
- The increased military drills, anti-European war songs and slogans worried the British hence a war in 1879.

- The rise of nationalism among the Zulu caused the war.
- The need by Catewayo to protect the Zulu independence also caused the 1879 Anglo-Zulu war.
- Loss of Zulu land in the Blood River area to the British also made the war inevitable.
- Outbreak of famine in Natal and Transvaal was blamed on the British which prepared both parties for a war.
- The war-like nature of Zulu kingdom caused the war between Cetewayo and Frere.
- The giving of the Blood River territory to the Boers by the British whose boundary extended into the Zulu land annoyed the Zulu.
- The displacement of the Zulu from the Blood River territory caused the war.
- Mal-administration of the whites especially in Blood River territory also caused the war.
- The disrespecting of the Zulu leaders by the British also emanated into a war.
- The rumor that the Zulu had murdered the white missionaries attracted the war.
- The Zulu murder of two adulterous women who had fled to the British made them declare a war on the Zulu.
- The Zulu victory against the British at the battle of Isandhalwana also caused the war.
- The British desire to revenge the Isandhalwana defeat by the Zulu in January 1879 made the 1879 Anglo-Zulu war inevitable.
- The existence of two uncompromising leaders i.e. Catewayo on the side of the Zulu and Sir Bartle Frere on the side of the British caused the war.
- The long held suspicion and mistrust between the Zulu and the British caused the war in 1879.

EFFECTS OF THE 1879 ANGLO-ZULU WAR

How did the disagreement in 1879 between the British and Zulu affect the people of South Africa?

- The British were defeated and humiliated by the Zulu at Isandhalwana battle in January 1879.
- The Zulu were defeated in the **Battle of Ulundi** in July 1879 and they lost their independence to the British.
- Cetewayo was overthrown and taken to the Cape and eventually to exile in London in 1882.
- The war disorganised the Zulu economy leading to poverty, misery and suffering.
- The Zulu kingdom was divided into 13 (thirteen) Chiefdoms and this greatly weakened the kingdom.
- The traditional rulers lost their power after the war. For example, Dinizulu who succeeded Cetewayo was demoted to a village chief.
- The rebellion also resulted into the destruction of property like plantations and homes.

- It also resulted into loss of lives on both sides i.e. the whites and Africans which led to depopulation.
- The Zulu lost their land to the whites and they were pushed into reserves.
- The rebellion laid foundation for other future rebellions such as the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- It led to the dethronement of Cetewayo and enthronement of Dinizulu as the king of the Zulu state.
- The military strength of the Zulu was crushed by the British at the Battle of Urundi.
- It led to abandonment of the federation scheme by Britain.
- It increased nationalism among the Zulu in South Africa.
- Trade and agriculture on both sides paralyzed as people concentrated in fighting.
- Africans became a source of cheap labour to the whites after the war.

FACTORS FOR THE DEFEAT OF THE ZULU

Why were the Zulu defeated in the Anglo-Zulu conflict?

- Famine and drought weakened the Zulu hence a defeat.
- The exiling of Cetewayo demoralized the Zulu hence losing to the British.
- The Zulu had weaker/inferior weapons like stones and arrows compared to the British with guns.
- The poor fighting tactics among the Zulu fighters led to the defeat.
- The Zulu enemies like the Swazi helped the British hence giving victory to the British.
- Poor leadership of Cetewayo who failed to unite all the Zulu led to the defeat of the Zulu.
- The Zulu's underestimation of the British after the victory at Isandhalwana also led to the victory of the British.
- Africans had inferiority complex and that is why they were defeated
- The low level of Zulu nationalism led to their defeat
- The Zulu had been weakened by civil wars between Mbulazi and Cetewayo hence a defeat.
- Succession disputes i.e. between Cetewayo and his brothers also weakened the Zulu
- The Zulu had poor economy which could not sustain fighting for long hence a defeat.
- The British were determined to eliminate the Zulu and create a federation of South Africa thus defeating Africans.
- The British were skilled and experienced in fighting compared to the Zulu
- The good leadership of the British under Sir Battle Frere led to the defeat of the Zulu.
- The British had a highly trained army compared to their counter parts the Zulu.
- The Zulu could not survive the period of scramble for and partition of South Africa hence a defeat.
- The British had support of the Boers whom they had given the Blood River territory.

THE BAMBATA/BAMBATHA REBELLION OF 1906

- This was the war/clash between the British and the Zulu took place in 1906.
- It was also called the Anglo-Zulu war of 1906 / Second Anglo-Zulu war.
- The rebellion was led by Chief Bambatha of the Zondi people in the Zondi reserve. Therefore, it took place mainly among the Zondi people in Zulu land.
- It took place during the reign of King Dinuzulu of the Zulu.

CAUSES OF THE BAMBATA REBELLION

What led to the Bambata rebellion?

What caused the clash between the Zulu and the British in 1906?

- The refusal of Bambata to pay taxes and the British attempt to hunt for him annoyed the Zulu making the rebellion inevitable.
- The exiling of Cetewayo in 1882 annoyed the Zulu leading to the conflict.
- The disintegration of the Zulu nation into 13 chiefdoms after the defeat of Cetewayo forced the Zulu to attack the British hence a war.
- The long held mistrust and suspicion between Zulu and the British also caused the war.
- The need for the Zulu to regain their independence which had been eroded by the British caused the war.
- The existence of able inspirational leadership of Chief Bambatha made the war inevitable.
- Loss of traditional powers of Zulu Kings and chiefs as they had lost control over their subjects also caused the war. For example, King Dinuzulu was demoted by the British to a mere headman which annoyed the Zulu.
- The low payments and work coupled with strict and poor conditions also caused the war.
- The desire by the Zulu to recover their land that had been taken by the British also led to the rebellion.
- The creation of reserves like Zondi with poor living conditions in Zulu land annoyed the Zulu hence a revolt in 1902.
- The making of the Zulu tenants on their own land and forceful pay of rent on it caused the war.
- The brutal methods of assessment and collecting taxes e.g. flogging, canning and imprisonment accounted for the war.
- The failure of peaceful ways to end the conflicts between the two caused the conflict.
- The rise of African nationalism and the spirit of Ethiopianism that gave a slogan **“Africa for Africans”** caused the rebellion.
- The panic of the British government that carried out massive arrests and imprisonment of innocent people regarded to be followers of Ethiopian independent churches also caused the war.
- The Zulu success at isandhlwana in 1879 against the British morale boosted them thus the Bambata rebellion.

- The confidence given by the tradition Religious prophecy that if they join the rebellion their lives would be saved caused the revolt.
- The defeat of the British by the Boers in Jameson Raid in 1895 inspired the Zulu to fight hence a rebellion.
- Heavy taxation caused the war or rebellion. For example, the Zulu were required to pay the poll tax among other taxes which annoyed them since they were not used to paying tax.
- The British oppressive and mal-administration caused the war e.g., the British introduced harsh laws where the Africans had no right to move from one place to another which annoyed them.
- The outbreak of diseases like rinderpest which killed African cattle was blamed on the British thus causing the war.
- To make matters worse, the British killing the infected animals and the refusal of the Zulu to eat them caused the war.
- The outbreak of natural calamities like the wide spread drought and famine were blamed on the whites which created war hysteria in order to loot food hence the war.
- The increased British imperialism and the desire to control the whole of South Africa also led them into conflicts with the Zulu.
- The increased number of whites into Zulu land annoyed the Zulu and hence the conflict in 1906.
- The revival of the Zulu militarism like the age regiments and other reforms gave morale to the Zulu to rise up against the British in 1906.
- The Second Anglo-Boer War of **1899-1902** caused the Bambata war. After this war, the Zulu thought that the British were exhausted and therefore they wanted to take advantage of this weakness.
- The brutal execution of twelve key Zulu leaders in early 1906 by the British officials because of the refusal to pay poll taxes further annoyed the Zulu, hence forcing them to rise up against the British.
- The mistaken identity caused the war. Traditionally, the Zulu mistook all whites for *Mlungu* which meant devils, sea monsters or “wizards”.
- The failure of peaceful means to end the conflicts between the Zulu and the British finally caused war by 1906.

EFFECTS OF THE 1906 BAMBATA REBELLION

What were the effects of this rebellion?

- The effects were negative and positive, social, political and economic.
- The Zulu were defeated by the British in the war.
- Bambata the leader of the rebellion was captured and killed in 1906.
- The Zulu nation lost its independence completely to the British.
- There was disintegration of Zulu kingdom into small communities.
- The Zulu militarism was completely destroyed by the British.
- Dinizulu was arrested in 1907 because he was suspected of having supported the rebellion.
- There was massive loss of life leading to depopulation as about 3,000 people died.
- The war led to famine as the Zulu concentrated on fighting and ignored agriculture.

- The war led to a decline in the economy as trade became to a standstill.
- There was destruction of property such as buildings, farms among others.
- There was loss of cattle due to cattle diseases such as rinder pest and looting.
- Africans lost more land to the British.
- The war resulted into displacement of people into reserves under poor living conditions.
- The Zulu became permanent servants on white farms as a result of the war.
- The Zulu nation was ruthlessly and systematically subjugated.
- Traditional leaders lost authority as they were replaced by the British.
- Africans lost trust and confidence in traditional beliefs and many adopted Christianity.
- British racial discrimination increased as the Zulu were made second class citizens.
- The failure of the rebellion forced the Africans to change to other forms of resistance and peaceful means so as to regain their independence. Therefore, the Africans learnt a lesson that the British were militarily stronger.
- The war encouraged the growth of independent church in Zulu land i.e. the dogma or slogan of “**Africa for Africans**”.
- It laid ground for future African nationalism in South Africa. For example, it paved way for the formation of mass political parties like the **Inkatha Freedom Party** and the **African National Congress (ANC)** so as to regain African independence.
- The British administration worsened i.e. became more strict on the political freedoms of the Zulu.
- British learnt a lesson and made some administrative reforms to avoid further uprisings. For example, in 1908 a bill was passed that allowed four whites to represent the Africans in the Legislative Council or Parliament.
- The war indirectly contributed to the **union of South Africa** in 1910 because the whites feared the Africans.

REASONS WHY THE BAMBATA REBELLION OF 1906 FAILED

- The lack of unity among the Africans led to their defeat.
- The determination of the British to colonize the Zulu state at all costs led to the defeat of the Africans in the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- The African had inferior weapons which they used for fighting like spears which could not defeat the British who used advanced weapons like the guns.
- The Africans lacked strong leaders to lead them against the British.
- The natural calamities like famine and disease weakened the Africans, hence making them unable to defeat the British in 1906.
- The Africans lacked a strong economy to finance a major war against the economically powerful British colonialists.
- The false belief in traditional religion by the Africans led to their defeat since it failed to defend them against the British.
- Africans lacked food supply which resulted into famine thereby leading to a defeat.

THE BASUTO (SOTHO) NATION

What were the origins of the Sotho state?

How was the Basuto/Sotho state established?

Describe the rise of the Basuto kingdom.

- The Sotho state is the modern Republic of Lesotho.
- It was also known as Basuto kingdom/ the Mountainous kingdom.
- The founders of the nation came from Central or West Africa.
- The state belonged to the Bantu speakers or the “NTU” speakers.
- It was formally an area for the Basotho settlement/Nguni/Khoisan settlement.
- It was born during the period of Mfecane as a defensive state by Mosheshe.
- Little is known about its early background i.e. the origin is not clear.
- It is believed that Mosheshe the founder of the state was born in about 1786 to Mokachane, a minor chief among the Kwenas.
- He is said to have belonged to Makoteli clan.
- He was brought up by a famous Sotho chief Mtolomi who prophesized that one day Mosheshe will become a great chief.
- He was intelligent, adventurous, patient, brave and a determined young man.
- During Mfecane, Mosheshe became prominent as a notorious cattle raider.
- The raided cattle became the basis of the Sotho economy.
- He then shaved his cattle to distinguish them from others thus the name Mosheshe meaning **“shaver of cattle.”**
- Before Mfecane, there was no state called Sotho but there existed only independent clans and chiefdoms.
- By 1815 (19th Century) Mosheshe started creating the Sotho state.
- At first, it was situated in Butha-Buthe.
- Because of the Tlokwa attacks, he transferred it to the Thaba-Bosiu (Hill of might) which was a good defensive place.
- He welcomed refugees into his state who were running away from Mfecane and gave them land for settlement.
- He allowed refugees to retain their chiefs as long as they remained loyal to him.
- He used diplomacy and marriage to create unity in his state.
- The state he created survived up to 1870 when he died due to old age.
- The state continued to exist beyond this period until when the British attacked and occupied it later.

ORGANIZATION OF SOTHO STATE

Describe the organization of the Basotho during the 17th Century.

- The Basotho state was founded in 1815-1824 by Mosheshe and it was during the Mfecane period.
- The Sotho state is the modern Lesotho nation.
- Its founders came from central or West Africa and they were Bantu speakers.
- It was created as a defensive state during Mfecane by Moshesh son of Mokachane a minor chief among the Kwenas.
- The kingdom was organized politically, economically and socially.

Political organization

- The Sotho was a centralized kingdom i.e. had a king and a powerful political system.
- The institution of Kingship was hereditary i.e. the king's eldest son inherited the throne.
- The king had a lot of powers but used them sparingly i.e. he acted as the civil, religious and judicial leader of his people.
- The nation was made up of many semi-independent chiefdoms that were brought under one central authority of Mosheshe.
- The chiefdom leaders enjoyed some freedom and authority over their people.
- Mosheshe left the chiefs to rule their people as long as they respected him.
- The conquered people gave gifts and paid tributes to Mosheshe as a sign of loyalty.
- Mosheshe set up headquarters in different parts of the nation and put them under his family members who would not easily betray him.
- He encouraged refugees to settle in Sotho state so as to increase its population.
- He put in place a spy network of his family members to get information from the conquered societies.
- The nation had no standing army but age-regiments provided security and could be called upon any time in case of need.
- Mosheshe used diplomacy other than violence to maintain peace in the kingdom and that is why he was friendly to the neighbours to have peace.
- Hilly areas served as the capitals of the kingdom like Butha-Buthe and later Thaba-Busiu which were easy to defend.
- Conquered chiefs were always consulted before any major political decision was made.
- There existed two parliaments in Sotho state that is the inner council and Pitso.
- The inner council was made up of king's relatives and conquered chiefs and it advised the king on day today administration.
- The other wider assembly (**Pitso**) was for circumcised men and its deliberations checked on powers of the king and chiefs.
- Even the assimilated Basuto were free to attend the Pisto meetings.
- Mosheshe encouraged missionaries to come and used them as advisors over European affairs.
- Mosheshe played stronger rulers against each other like Shaka against Matiwane of the Ngwane.
- He also sent tributes and gifts to powerful neighbours like Shaka and also land to the Boers to avoid being attacked.
- Mosheshe placed political refugees on the margins of the capital to avoid disturbing the kingdom.

Economic organization

- The Basuto practiced a mixed economy of agriculture and cattle keeping.
- They grew crops like yams, cassava, beans, sorghum etc. in the mountain valleys as a source of food.
- They kept animals like cows, goats and sheep that supplement food crops as a source of diet and trade items.
- They carried out fishing along Rivers as a source of food and a trade item.
- They carried out some food gathering in the forests and bushes to supplement agriculture.

- The Basuto also traded with the neighbours and later Europeans to acquire items they could not produce like guns.
- They supplied/ exchanged iron tools, food stuffs and cattle products to Europeans for guns and other manufactured goods.
- Some sections of the Basuto carried out iron working and made tools like spears, arrows, hoes etc.
- They also carried out hunting to supplement pastoralism as a source of food.
- Pottery and weaving were also carried out by the Basuto and well decorated items were produced for home use and trade.
- Land was communally owned and the king kept it on behalf of the people.
- In fact the king distributed land to his people and other foreigners to use it.
- With the discovery of minerals, the Sotho moved to European farms, mines, industries and homes to look for jobs.

Social organization

- The Sotho nation had a mixture of cultures since it had been formed by gathering refugees of Mfecane.
- However, the absorbed people adopted the Sotho culture.
- The clan was the biggest unit of social organization and each under a clan leader.
- A family was the smallest social unity among the Sotho and it was headed by a man.
- Mosheshe created unity in the nation through marriage alliances and he had over 100 women from different clans.
- The Sotho were encouraged to practice exogamous marriages (marriage out of their clans) so as to enhance unity.
- Polygamy was a common practice though monogamy also existed.
- They practiced initiation ceremonies where by the youth would move from one stage of development to another.
- The Sotho were religious and worshipped their ancestral spirits i.e. believed in small gods.
- They also believed that there high God was called Modimo who created the world and determined its destiny.
- The king was a chief priest and the religious leader of his people.
- Every family was protected by the spirits of its ancestors.
- The Sotho celebrated important stages in life like birth, puberty, adolescence, marriage and death.

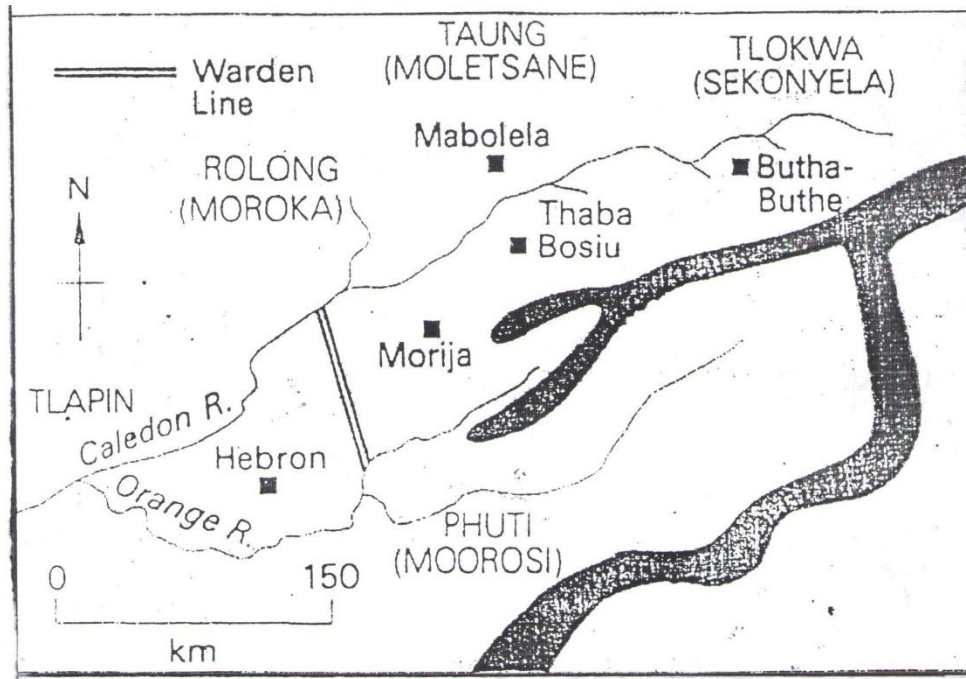
MOSHESHE'S CONTRIBUTION TO BASUTO LAND

Explain the contribution of Mosheshe to Basuto land between 1820 and 1870.

- It is believed that Mosheshe was born in 1786 to Mokachane, a minor chief among the Kwena.
- He is said to have belonged to the Makoteli clan of the Kwena.
- His father was Mokachane who was a minor chief among the Kwena people.
- During his days, Mosheshe became prominent as a cattle-raider.
- He even shaved his cattle to distinguish them hence the name “the shaver”.
- He was a man of rare qualities, intelligent and with great abilities.

- He was a great military leader who gave protection to several refugees who ran to his chieftdom for protection.
- He was able to expand the Basuto land and he also protected the independence of the Nation.
- He was able to bring people of different origins/backgrounds together in one state.
- He also allowed them to maintain their rulers as long as they remained loyal to him.
- He laid a foundation for the new powerful Basuto nation.
- He effectively headed the Basuto Nation during the period of imperialism.
- He promoted the nation with one language and one culture.
- The unity he created through marriage alliances persisted even after his death.
- He built a strong army well equipped with guns and horses for the defence of the Basuto.
- He successfully defended his nation against hostile neighbours like the Ndebele and Zulu.
- He sent gifts of virgin girls, cattle etc. to Shaka to prevent attacks.
- He also promoted trade with the Europeans especially the British at the cape.
- He restored law and order in the area that had just gone through the Mfecane revolution.
- He skillfully avoided direct confrontation with the British until his country was declared a British protectorate.
- He avoided war with the British through signing treaties like the Napier treaty, paying fines of cattle to the British.
- He protected and defended the land of the people.
- He allowed missionaries especially the Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM) to settle in his kingdom and offer him advice.
- He established mission stations on the outskirts of the kingdom for defence.
- He encouraged Western civilization and education that had been brought by the missionaries.
- He strengthened the economy of his nation by giving land and cattle to his people.
- He temporarily gave land to the Boers to avoid wars with them.
- He never converted to Christianity as a way of maintaining unity in the kingdom.
- He defeated the Tlokwa chief Sekonyera and annexed Tlokwa land to the Basuto.
- He encouraged cattle keeping and farming to boost the economy.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE EXTENT OF MOSHESHE'S EXPANSION



PROBLEMS FACED BY MOSHESHE BETWEEN 1815 AND 1868

- Mosheshe ruled Basuto land between 1815 and 1868.
- He had founded the Sotho nation during the period of Mfecane gathering refugees first at Butha-Buthe and later Thaba-Bosiu.
- He faced many problems as the leader of the Basuto land and they were political, social and economic.
- He faced external attacks by the neighbours like Ngwane, Tlokwa among others.
- The Tlokwa attacks forced him to move his capital from Butha-Buthe to Thaba-Bosiu hence a problem.
- There were desperate groups in Basutoland e.g. the cannibals who created insecurity in the state.
- Many of his people were eaten by cannibals during the time when they were moving to Thaba-Bosiu.
- He lost many cattle which he gave to powerful neighbours like Shaka of the Zulu and Mzilikazi of the Ndebele in an attempt to protect his kingdom.
- The missionaries fooled him and he gave them land.
- He lost many animals especially cattle to powerful leaders like Shaka and chief Mzilikazi.
- Many villages were devastated by the raids organized by the neighbouring states.
- Some people forced him to give jobs to the people he had educated.
- Most of his land was taken by the Boers and this reduced the size of the Sotho nation.
- His nation experienced famine and drought due to Boer attacks of his state leading to destruction of gardens.

- The creation of Orange Free State at the neighbourhood of Basuto left the state defenceless.
- The conquered people kept on demanding for their independence.
- The period of scramble and partition of South Africa was a problem to his kingdom.
- Mosheshe lacked adequate guns to protect his kingdom from the European colonialists.
- In fact in 1868, the Basuto nation was taken over by the British and it was declared her British protectorate.

HOW MOSHESHE HANDLED AND SOLVED THE PROBLEMS

- Mosheshe established his strong headquarters at Thuba-Bosiu which would be easily defended.
- He always played his enemies against each other e.g. when the Tlokwa attacked him, he used Shaka to destroy them.
- He gave virgin girls and cattle to strong neighbouring rulers like Shaka and Mzilikazi.
- He gave land and cattle to the refugees in order to silence them.
- He conquered more land which solved the problem of population pressure.
- He employed his female relatives as spies in areas where they married and this maintained law and order.
- He conquered guns and horses to compete with the enemies.
- He formed a strong army that protected the nation.
- He invited missionaries to civilize and advise him how to develop the nation.
- He gave land on the borders of Basuto state to refugees to protect his people against enemies/attacks.
- He used diplomacy and wrote an apology letter to the British governor at the cape.
- He formed a spy network of his family members and hence able to know his enemies.
- He asked for protection from the British and save his nation from the Boers.

MOSHESHE'S RELATIONSHIP WITH EUROPEANS AFTER 1830

Describe Moshesh's relationship with Europeans after 1830

- Mosheshe's relationship with the Europeans was both good and bad.
- The Paris evangelical missionaries were the first Europeans that Mosheshe dealt with.
- He had heard about them and invited them to his kingdom.
- He gave these French missionaries land on which to build mission stations.
- The missionaries later became advisors to Mosheshe.
- He gave them privileges like land and also allowed them to freely preach to his people.
- He made missionaries his advisors on political and European affairs.
- He also allowed the missionaries to educate his people.
- The Boers later arrived in the state.
- He also gave them land for temporary settlement and grazing.
- However, the Boers refused to recognize Mosheshe's authority.
- They considered land given to them as permanent.

- Later because of the Boers' act, Mosheshe asked the British for protection as a way to safeguard his independence.
- In 1843, the Napier treaty was signed between the British and Mosheshe.
- The treaty was warning the Boers not to steal the Basuto land.
- In 1846, Mosheshe entered into an agreement with the British.
- The agreement aimed at stopping Boer conflicts with the Basuto.
- According to the agreement, free land was to be set aside by Mosheshe on which European farmers would settle.
- The Basuto had to re-locate and settle elsewhere.
- The whites were supposed to pay for the rights to use land.
- They were not supposed to leave or farm outside the areas allocated to them by the Basuto.
- The agreement of 1846 was aborted and would not solve the Basuto-White war.
- The whites were not willing to abandon their farms they had already occupied outside the area set aside for them.
- In 1848, Governor Sir Harry Smith annexed Orange River territory in an attempt to end the Basuto-Boer wars.
- However, the conflicts couldn't easily be removed because there was no clear acceptable boundary between the conflicting parties.
- In 1849, the warden line was drawn and as a result, the Basuto lost 32 km of land to the British.
- The warden line encouraged the Basuto to raid the Boers who they defeated seriously.
- The British and the Boers were led by George Warden against the Basuto.
- This was in order to stop the conflict and also for the British to acquire prestige.
- The British Governor Carth Cart ordered Mosheshe to pay fine of 10,000 cows of the recent acts.
- Mosheshe managed to pay 3,500 cows only on the third day and he asked for more time which was rejected.
- In 1852, the British attacked the Basuto and captured large herds of cattle.
- Mosheshe decided to write a letter to the Governor requesting him not to attack the Basuto again.
- In 1868, Carth Cart withdrew and Mosheshe's request was granted for being a British protectorate.
- Mosheshe died a happy man in 1870 after defending his people from the Boer imperialism/nationalism.

FACTORS FOR THE DECLINE OR DOWNFALL OF THE SOTHO/BASUTO NATION

- Succession distributes among the sons of Mosheshe resulted into serious wars which contributed to the downfall of the Basuto nation.
- The discovery of minerals in the Basutoland contributed to the annexation of the nation by the British in order to exploit such minerals hence leading to its decline.
- The death of Mosheshe in 1870 left a power vacuum which could not easily be filled by the weak sons of Mosheshe.
- The strength of the British and the Boers with superior weapons gave them an upper hand over the Basuto hence leading to the decline of the nation.

- Wide spread of diseases such as malaria, sleeping sickness etc. led to the downfall of the nation.
- Famine due to constant wars forced people to starve leading to the collapse of the Basuto nation.
- Constant raids carried out by the Boers and British made the kingdom weak as it led to the death of energetic men.
- Lack of a standing army after Mosheshe's death also contributed to the decline of the state.
- Mosheshe's diplomacy of giving land to the Boers disappointed the Africans who looked for all ways of bringing Mosheshe's reign to an end.
- The breaking away of the vassal states after 1870 from the empire also weakened it and led to its decline.
- The British annexation of the Basuto land under the request of Mosheshe was the final blow for the collapse of the nation.

THE ANGLO-BASUTO CONFLICT/THE PUTHI REBELLION/THE WAR OF GUNS/DISARMAMENT WAR OF 1880

- The Anglo- Basuto conflict of 1880-1881 is also known as the war of guns, disarmament war or Puth rebellion or the Basuto resistance.
- It was fought between the British cape government and the Basuto/Sotho kingdom.
- The Basuto were led by chief Moroosi, Lerothodi and Letsie.
- The British were led by Sir Gordon Spriggs, the cape Prime Minister.
- It was fought in two phases i.e. the first phase between 1878 and 1879 under Chief Moroosi Puthi and the second phase between 1880-1881 under Lerothodi.

CAUSES OF THE WAR OF GUNS

What led to the Anglo-Basuto conflict of 1880?

- The causes were long-term and short-term, social and economic in nature.
- The British desire to disarm the Basuto caused the rebellion.
- The refusal of the Basuto to surrender their guns to the British caused the war of guns.
- The rise of Sotho leaders Moroosi and Lerothodi also caused the rebellion since they inspired their subjects to fight.
- The presence of guns among the Basuto given by the Boers and the British gave them confidence to resist hence a rebellion.
- The death of Mosheshe a great diplomat opened the Basuto state to the Whites leading to the outbreak of the war.
- The need by the Sotho to defend their independence led to the outbreak of the Puth-resistance.
- The 1871 British annexation of the cape was hated by the Sotho hence leading to the rebellion.
- The earlier Basuto victory in 1878 motivated them to resist again in 1880 hence the war of guns.

- The undermining of African leaders by the British also caused the war.
- The arrest of Moroosi's on accusation that he had stolen a gun and a horse also caused the war.
- The killing of Moroosi while resisting the imprisonment of his son made more Basuto to join the war.
- The British opening of Southern Lesotho to white settlement was hated by the Africans there by causing the revolt.
- Loss of land by the Basuto to the British caused the war.
- Forced labour on the white farms was hated by the Sotho thus causing the rebellion.
- The undermining of African culture by the British also caused the war.
- The increasing number of missionaries in the Sotho State worried the Basuto thus causing the rebellion.
- The British increase of the hut tax was hated by the Basuto thus causing the rebellion.
- Inspiration by earlier African resistances like Pedi resistance and Isandhalwana in 1879 caused the war.
- The appointment of a British magistrate Mr. Hope among the Puthi caused the rebellion.

EFFECTS OF THE WAR OF GUNS

How did the war affect the people of South Africa?

- The effects were both positive and negative as shown below.
- The British were defeated and humiliated by the Sotho.
- The British accepted to offer protection to the Basuto against their enemies.
- The Basuto independence was preserved as a result of the war.
- The Basuto were allowed to keep their guns but they were to register them.
- The war led to paralyzing of economic activities like agriculture and tread.
- It resulted into the outbreak of famine since agriculture went to a standstill.
- The war caused a lot of poverty to the Sotho due to loss of cattle.
- The war resulted into displacement of the Basuto in South Africa.
- The war emanated into the killing of the Basuto ring leaders like Moroosi and Lerothodi.
- The war led to destruction of property like buildings, farms among others.
- The war led to declaration of Basutoland a British protectorate.
- It inspired the outbreak of other rebellions against the whites like Nama-Herero of 1904-1907.
- The war increased the Basuto nationalism.
- The British gave money to the Basuto for rehabilitating their economy.
- The war caused a lot of suffering and misery to the people in the Basutoland.

FACTORS FOR THE SUCCESS OF THE BASUTO

- Many factors made the Basuto successful in this war.
- The use of defensive positions in the Basuto nation like hills of Butha-Buthe and Thaba-Bosiu led to their success.

- The Sotho cities were large to accommodate many people for protection thus leading to their victory.
- The Basuto's knowledge about the use of guns led to their success over the British.
- The Sotho had experience and skills retained after fighting the Korana and the Griqua.
- Their early victory over the British in 1878 motivated them to fight hence achieving success.
- The long period of peace and security created by Mosheshe made the Sotho nation strong thus defeating the British.
- The strong unity among the Basuto since the time of Mosheshe led to their success over the British.
- The high spirit of nationalism among the Basuto led to their victory against the British.
- The British underestimation of the Basuto strength contributed to the success of the Basuto.
- The good leadership provided by the Basuto chiefs like Moroosi and Lerothodi led to their victory.
- The Sotho use of the guerilla war tactics of surprise attacks also led to the defeat of the British.
- The British had fatigue after the Anglo-Zulu war of 1879 thus leading to the success of the Basuto.
- The killing of Moroosi made the Sotho more determined to win the war hence success.
- The determination of the Sotho to defend their independence led to their victory against the British.
- The Basuto had a strong economy as they traded with the Europeans which helped them to finance and sustain the war.
- The British lack of military re-enforcement from the cape which was far led to the success of the Basuto.
- The final withdraw of the British troops and the acceptance of the peace treaty in 1881 led to the success of the Basuto.

THE SWAZI NATION

- It was also a multi-ethnic society that came into existence during the great mfecane period.
- The Swazi nation earned its name from one of the greatest king called **Mswati**.
- The kingdom/nation was founded by Sobhuza who was a chief of Ngwane clan of the Northern Ndwandwe tribe.
- Due to land shortages, there was a war between Ndwandwe under Zwile and Ngwane under Sobhuza. The Ngwane were defeated and were led by Sobhuza to central parts of Northern Swaziland.
- The leading people in Swaziland in the 16th Century were **Nkosi Dlamini** clan of the Nguni. They had gained control over the neighbouring Nguni and Sotho people.
- Sobhuza the 1st who ruled from 1814-1840 led to the growth of the nation.
- By this time, more clans joined the kingdom.

- Refugee groups from Zulu regiments found security in the mountains and caves of the Swazi land and they promised to be loyal to Sobhuza in the exchange for their safety.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE AND GROWTH OF SWAZI NATION

- The clash between powerful leaders i.e. Zwile and Sobhuza forced Sobhuza to drive his people into Swaziland which grew as a kingdom.
- Incorporation of smaller conquered groups, tribes and chiefdoms led to the rise and growth of the Swazi nation.
- The existence of few succession disputes among members of the royal class also led to the rise and growth of the Swazi nation.
- The presence of a highly organized and efficient government system also led to the rise and growth of the Swazi nation.
- The presence of able leaders e.g. Sobhuza in 1814-1840 and Mswati from 1840-1868 also led to the growth of the Swazi nation.
- Availability of a strong standing army made up of the young energetic men also contributed to rise of the nation.
- The strategic location and geographical advantage also favoured the growth of the state i.e. mountains and caves in the great Usufu valley favoured security.
- Organized division of labour between men and women was very important in the state's economic development hence the rise and growth.
- Constant raids carried out by Swazi people to the weaker neighbouring societies for cattle and energetic men also led to growth of the nation.
- Internal and external trade carried out by the Swazi people increased the wealth of the state leading to its rise.
- The ability of Sobhuza 1 to live in peace with more powerful neighbouring states e.g. Ndwandwe and Zulu avoided serious wars which favoured the growth of the nation.
- Agriculture especially growing crops like maize, millet, sorghum and animal rearing provided enough food to the growing population.
- The outbreak of the great mfecane period during the second half of the 19th Century also led to the rise of the state.

THE ORGANISATION OF THE SWAZI NATION

The Swazi nation was organized politically, economically and socially as written below.

Political organization

- The swazi kingdom had a centralized system of administration with the king on top of the General Administration.
- The Swazi kings were given a title of Ngwanyama and had absolute powers i.e. he could appoint and dismiss the chiefs.
- The kings were advised and assisted by a small council called **Liqoqo** with the matters of administration.
- There was a general council called **Libandla** which consisted of all chiefs and important men of Swazi nation and it was to discuss important matters of the nation.

- The kingdom was divided into a number of chiefdoms and each of the chiefdom had its own organization.
- The Swazi kings had their descendants come from Nkozi Dlamini land.
- The Swazi force was organized into age regiments.
- The Queen mother had a unique position and was to be consulted in all tribal matters. She could influence the king and acted as a regent if the king died.
- Chiefs were responsible to the king who was taken as the overall paramount chief in the matters of administration.

Economic organization

- The Swazi people carried out farming and they grew mainly food crops i.e. sorghum, millet, wheat etc.
- They carried out animal rearing and kept animals like cattle, goats etc. for economic and traditional values like marriage.
- They also practiced black smith and made tools for domestic work and defensive purpose.
- The Swazi people carried out hunting and fruit gathering in jungles to supplement on their diet.
- They also involved themselves in profitable trade in Cape colony and Delagoa bay.
- They carried out raids on their weaker neighbouring societies for cattle.

Social organization

- The Swazi practiced polygamy and their wives never came from Nkozi Dlamini clan.
- The king was the central figure among the Swazi religious affairs i.e. he was also a religious leader.
- The Swazi were divided into clans and each person belonged to a certain clan.
- The king married many wives in order to forge unity in the kingdom. This was pronounced during the time of Mswati 1.
- They carried out cultural ceremonies e.g. initiation to mark the end of one stage and the beginning of a new stage in life.
- They believed in small gods and they often sacrificed to them.
- The elders in the society were respected so much due their experience in daily events and life.

HOW SOBHUZA 1 MANAGED TO BUILD A STRONG SWAZI NATION

- Due to Sobhuza's policies, the new enlarged nation achieved unity necessary for the success of a multi-tribal state.
- He was able to build a strong Swazi nation in the following ways;
- Sobhuza was able to defeat the weaker neighbouring states and joined them on the Swazi nation.
- He treated the opponents of Ngwane sympathetically after their defeat and this enabled him to expand the nation.
- Sobhuza avoided wars with strong neighbouring states like Zulu hence building a strong nation.
- He recruited the young conquered men into the army to make it strong which helped him in defence and expansion of the kingdom.

- He employed women spies who were directly answerable to him and reported what was taking place all over the kingdom.
- He used diplomatic skills such as assimilating the conquered people into the society hence building his nation.
- He also enabled the conquered people to adopt the Nguni culture and customs which assisted him hence building a strong nation.
- He united people of different origin, historical background and culture hence building the state.
- He was also able to build a strong nation by reconciling with the enemies to avert further wars.
- He decentralized powers to various chiefs in the nation.
- He also used the Nguni and Sotho political practices i.e. by forming a loose confederation involving various chiefs.

CHANGES INTRODUCED BY KING MSWATI 1

- King Mswati took on the administration of the Swazi kingdom in 1840 and established himself as the greatest leader Nguni king.
- He gave his name to the Nguni society as the people of Mswati (Swazi).
- During his time in power, the king became the leader of the annual ceremonies (in Kwalu).
- The royal villages were created in the state and they were under the royal wives.
- The Queen mother became the most important political figure in the state next to king during the time of Mswati.
- The king had responsibility to the national council of elders (**Libandla**) during the times of Mswati 1.
- Siswati language became the commonest language among the clans and Nguni tribe during Mswati's reign.
- He extended the Swazi boundary as far as River Limpopo in 1862.
- Mswati also militarized the kingdom in reaction to his hostile neighbours e.g. Zulu and Boers.
- Mswati borrowed many ideas from the Zulu, Sotho, Pedi and Ndwandwe structure of government.
- He gained control over his neighbouring people in 1860 and tried to expand his influence over the neighbouring societies.
- The subject assimilated youth were placed into the army.
- He also carried out constant military wars and raids to the neighbouring communities.

MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA

- Missionaries were soldiers of Christ who came to spread Christianity.
- They came to South Africa after the revival of a religious movement in England in the 18th Century.
- Key missionaries who came to South Africa were Dr. John Moffat, John Phillip, Van Der Kemp, and Dr. David Livingstone

- They were sent by different missionary organizations like;
 - The London Missionary Society (LMS)
 - The Church Missionary Society (CMS)
 - The Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM)
 - The Free Church of Scotland (FCS)
 - The British Bible Society (BBS)
 - The Moravian Missionaries (MM)
 - The Dutch Reformed Church (DRC) among others.
- These religious groups/churches operated in different parts of South Africa.
 - The London Missionary Society worked among the Khoikhoi, cape colony and Xhosa.
 - The Moravian worked among the Africans like the khoikhoi.
 - The free church of Scotland operated at the cape and Natal.
 - The Dutch reformed church worked mainly in the Dutch settled areas.
 - The Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM) among the Basuto under King Mosheshe.

REASONS FOR THE COMING OF CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA

- The reasons for the coming the missionaries were political, economic and humanitarian.
- The missionaries wanted to spread Christianity to the Africans in South Africa.
- The need to civilize Africans i.e. teaching them how to read and write forced the missionaries into South Africa.
- They wanted to improve on the African standards of living.
- The need to explore and exploit the African resources forced missionaries to come in South Africa.
- The success of earlier travelers e.g. explores attracted the missionaries to come into South Africa.
- The need to pave a way for European imperialism by creating a friendly relationship between Africans and Europeans forced them into South Africa.
- They were driven by the need to check on the spread of Islam in South Africa.
- They wanted to complete the work of Dr. David Livingstone who had left a big part of the work incomplete.
- The need to stop slave trade and slavery also attracted the missionaries to come to South Africa.
- Missionaries wanted to pacify Africa through stopping interstate and intertribal wars that had dominated South Africa.
- They came to fight against diseases since Africa had been referred to as a “white man’s grave.”
- They also came to prepare a way for the introduction of legitimate trade that was aimed at substituting slave trade.
- They also came to find employment opportunities as teachers, preachers, Doctors etc.
- They wanted to create market for European industrial goods e.g. mirror, guns etc.
- Some missionaries were invited by African leaders e.g. Mosheshe invited British missionaries.

PROBLEMS FACED BY CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA

- They faced a problem of African tropical diseases such as Malaria, sleeping sickness etc. which killed many of them e.g. Dr. Livingstone.
- They faced a problem of hostile African tribes which affected their work.
- They lacked Geographical knowledge of South Africa thus affecting their work.
- They also faced a problem of poor means of transport which hindered their movement. South Africa had no well-constructed roads.
- They also faced a challenge of poor means of communication in South Africa. They thus found it hard to communicate to home countries.
- They also suffered from disunity among themselves e.g. the Dutch were against other Christian missionary groups.
- They faced a problem of Geographical barriers e.g. Mountains, valleys, forests and Rivers.
- They also faced a challenge of language barrier because they didn't know African languages.
- Missionaries lacked funds to facilitate their activities in South Africa.
- They were attacked by wild animals like lions, elephants among others.
- They also lacked supplies like food and medicine which led them into starvation.
- They suffered from harsh climate i.e. they were not used to African climate.
- They lacked man power since they were few in number.
- They also faced a problem of accommodation as there were no developed structures for settlement.
- They faced opposition from African traditional religion.
- Many of the African were illiterate and backward i.e. they didn't know how to read and write.

What problems did Christian missionaries in South Africa face?

ACTIVITIES OF CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA

Describe the activities of Christian Missionaries in South Africa during the 19th Century.

- Their activities were political, economic, and social in nature.
- They preached the gospel/Christianity to Africans.
- They built a number of Churches, where the gospel was preached and Christianity spread.
- They built mission stations for the run-away slaves like Bethelsdorp near Port Elizabeth. This mission station was established by Van Der Kemp and it became the political headquarters of the Africans in the fight against the Whites.
- They built technical schools in places like Loredale, Heald Town in the cape colony.
- They built formal schools where Africans were taught how to read and write.
- Taught Africans practical skills in brick laying, shoe making, etc.
- They build hospitals and health centers that fought diseases among the Africans.
- They built roads so as to improve on transport and communication.
- They discouraged some African cultures and traditions like polygamy and witchcraft.

- Spread western culture to the Africans and gave them new languages, new eating habits.
- They also called for a fair hearing to African cases / complaints.
- Some missionaries like Van Des Kemp encouraged hard work/fought laziness among the Africans.
- They established the first printing press in South Africa i.e. Dr. Phillip wrote a book **“Researchers in South Africa”** an attack on white attitude towards Africans.
- They advocated for the removal of the Pass system / laws that limited African movements.
- They demanded for the reduction of the long working hours for slaves.
- They also influenced the emancipation of slaves in 1834.
- They exerted pressure on the British government to introduce Black circuit Courts in 1811 to fight for the rights of Africans / slaves.
- They campaigned against African slavery and bondage of Boer Masters.
- They fought against racial segregation / apartheid of Boers in South Africa.
- They called for equality, fraternity, liberty, freedom and humanity of nonwhites in South Africa.
- They even married Africans to promote inter-cultural mixing.
- They even convinced the British Parliament to nullify or cancel the British annexation of the Province of Queen Adelaide.
- They translated the Bible in different South African languages.
- They helped in settling disputes between Africans and Boers in South Africa.
- The Dutch Reformed Church preached social segregation and superiority of the whites against the Africans.
- The missionaries acted as agents of colonialism. For example, at times they spied on the African governments on behalf of their home governments.

EFFECTS OF MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES IN SOUTH AFRICA

How did these activities affect the peoples of South Africa?

- The results were political, social, and Economic in nature as well as positive and negative.
- Many Africans converted to Christianity.
- African traditional religion and cultures were undermined and considered backward and positive e.g. was decrease in polygamy, witchcraft, twin murder, worshiping of idols, etc.
- As a result, many Africans adopted European cultures through education, dressing, religion, etc.
- Some African chiefs lost their respect as their people put a lot of respect on the new religion undermining traditional authority. Some refused to fight in the defence of their chiefs.
- They divided Africans into hostile camps like Christians against non-Christians, educated against non-educated.
- Through inter-tribal conflicts, tribalism and sectarianism were created by the Christian missionaries.

- Their activities further led to the formation of independent churches that tried to preach an African oriented version of the Gospel.
- They encouraged hard work among Africans and many able to get paid Jobs.
- In their schools, Africans got trained for white collar Jobs or professions i.e. doctors, nurses, teachers, lawyers, interpreters, etc.
- Africans learnt how to read and write. In other words, they became literate.
- Their schools laid a foundation for the growth of African nationalism i.e. they produced the pioneer nationalists e.g. Nelson Mandela, Albert Lithuli, Robert Sobukwe, etc.
- Bantu languages were put into writing and this improved on the communication between Africans and whites.
- Africans learnt foreign languages like French, Dutch, English and Latin.
- Africans got better health care through the hospitals and this reduced on the death rates among the Africans.
- Their mission stations became homes for run-away slaves.
- They promoted equality of all races through building racially mixed schools e.g. Loredale.
- They provided Africans with educational values, knowledge, skills and positive attitude.
- Through their technical schools, Africans acquired technical skills such as brick laying, carpentry, joinery, construction and building etc.
- They led to the establishment of the circuit court that gave Africans chance to report their harsh Boer masters.
- Africans enjoyed some of their rights e.g. movement freedom after the passing the 50th ordinance, right to good working conditions, etc.
- Some Africans like the Xhosa regained some of their land that had been taken by the Boers.
- They improved communication and transport by building roads and bridges that made life better for the Africans.
- The activities of missionaries improved on the living standards of the people in South Africa.
- They led to a class of collaborations e.g. Chief Khama of the Tswana who helped in the colonization of Botswana.
- They improved on Agriculture through scientific means i.e. hybrid seeds, ox-ploughs, crop rotation, mulching, and use of fertilizers leading to increased agricultural output.
- They won African trust e.g. Dr. Kemp dressed in the Khoikhoi style and walked bare footed.
- They also spoilt the relationship between the Boers and the British through favouring the Africans. This led to the outbreak of the Great Trek.
- Their teachings also made the Boer farmers to experience labour shortages on their farms.
- The conflicts between the Boers and British missionaries led to the Slatcher's Nek incident or killings. By this incident five Boers who were rebelling against the British were hanged by the British.
- They introduced western architecture of building square houses using bricks and iron sheets.

- Some missionary groups like the Dutch Reformed Church encouraged apartheid policy.
- Their activities laid the foundation for the colonization of South Africa leading to loss of independence. It is true to describe them as fore runners of colonization.
- They encouraged the Barolong tribe to declare their independence from Mosheshe hence undermining African authority.
- They encouraged inter-cultural marriages with the Africans and this promoted equality.
- Their teachings led to the stopping of slavery in 1834.
- They are also credited for having established the first printing press at the cape which produced reading materials for the Africans.
- They encouraged legitimate trade between the Africans and whites which improved African standards.
- They participated in the local African politics by acting as suppliers of guns or advisers to African chiefs e.g. PEM provided good political advice to Mosheshe and this helped him to cool down resistances.
- They translated the Bible from English to local languages easing the spread of the gospel.
- Missionaries mediated in African-Boer conflicts e.g. the Kaffir wars creating peace among the Africans and the Boers.
- Missionary activities led to loss of land e.g. the Dutch Reformed Church grabbed African land.

THE ROLE OF CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN THE COLONISATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

- The nature of missionary preaching e.g. love your neighbours as you love yourself softened the African hearts leading to colonisation.
- Missionaries divided Africans along religious dominions e.g. Catholics, protestants thereby undermining their capacity to resist.
- Missionaries also got involved in treaty signing on behalf of their home governments e.g. Bishop Moffat signed a treaty with Lobengula in 1888.
- Some missionaries were absorbed into colonial administration to solve man power shortage.
- Missionaries put pressure on their home governments to come for colonial take over through giving positive reports.
- They appealed for protection from their home governments which leveled the ground for the colonization of South Africa.
- They gave financial assistance to the colonialists in order to extend their authority to different parts of South Africa.
- Missionaries set up mission stations which acted as colonial government quarters in South Africa.
- They introduced formal education which prepared agents of colonial rule during the implementation of their colonial policies.
- They prepared a way for the colonial economy through the promotion of legitimate trade in South Africa.

- They also contributed a great deal towards the process of winning collaborators for European colonization.
- Missionaries undermined African culture by calling it satanic and barbaric thus undermining African patriotism.
- They constructed roads and other physical structures which were used for effective administration of South Africa.

THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH (DRC)

- It was the earliest church in South Africa.
- It was formed by the early Dutch settlers in South Africa.
- In 1806 when the British took over the cape from the Batavian Republic, the DRC was the most powerful in South Africa.
- It drew its members from the Dutch only.
- It was against non-whites and human rights of Africans.
- Its teachings were based on the Old Testament especially the story of Noah and his three sons (Ham, Japheth and Shem).
- It stated that the whites were descendants of Japheth and Shem – the best sons of Noah and therefore they born saved and superior.
- It further stated that the non-whites or Africans were descendants of Ham who was cursed by his father and therefore they were also born cursed and doomed.
- The preaching stated that the whites were saved while Africans were cursed and inferior.

REASONS WHY THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH WAS FORMED

- The church was formed to promote the white superiority in South Africa.
- It was formed to promote racial segregation in South Africa.
- The church was formed to get cheap labour from the Africans through enslaving them.
- It was aimed at preserving the white civilization in South Africa.
- It was formed to enable the Dutch take over South Africa because they believed that it was their promised land.
- It was also formed to enhance effective exploitation of African resources like minerals.
- It was formed to spread Christianity in South Africa.
- The need to provide elementary education to the Dutch children led to the formation of the church.
- The need to promote trade with other whites within and outside South Africa forced them to form the DRC.
- There was a need to preserve the Dutch culture hence the formation of the DRC.
- It was formed to promote Boer nationalism i.e. independence feelings.
- It was formed to support the Dutch in their political, social and economic problems of life.
- It was aimed at encouraging the Dutch to persecute Africans.

- They wanted to promote the belief that they were the God chosen race of God.

ACTIVITIES OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH

- The Dutch Reformed church promoted a view that Africans were cursed.
- The DRC called for separation between the whites and Blacks.
- The church provided elementary education that included writing, reading and arithmetic.
- The DRC preached that South Africa was their Canaan or Promised Land.
- The church encouraged mistreatment of Africans.
- The church also preached for preservation of Dutch superiority over non-whites.
- The DRC promoted Boer nationalism and isolation in South Africa.
- Once every year, members of the DRC made a pilgrimage to a well-known place. This was for Holy Communion and to renew their faith and commitment.
- After the pilgrimage, Boer co-operation was emphasized.
- They were encouraged to trade among themselves in South Africa.
- Western culture was promoted through the work of the DRC while African culture was undermined.
- The DRC carried out the sacrament of baptism to new believers who joined the church.
- They promoted white civilization since they believed that they were born blessed and saved.
- It provided religious foundation to all Dutch settlers in South Africa.
- The DRC was opened to the non-Dutch in 1857 on condition that they would obey Dutch laws.
- The activities of the DRC were mainly in Graaf Reinet, Orange Free State, Transvaal, Swellendam, Bosch etc.

EFFECTS OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH (DRC)

ON THE BLACKS/AFRICANS

- Africans formed independent church movements to oppose the Dutch preaching.
- Africans became more united and began fighting against the Dutch.
- The DRC undermined the status and pride of Africans.
- The DRC laid a foundation for racial discrimination in South Africa.
- The DRC increased Afrikaner nationalism against non-whites.
- The DRC increased land grabbing activities from the Blacks thus displacement of Africans from their land.
- Africans were denied education and so they remained illiterate.
- The DRC caused a lot of misery and suffering among the Blacks.
- The DRC undermined African traditional religion.
- Africans became inferior in South Africa due to Dutch Reformed Church.
- It led to formation of rebellions by the Africans e.g. Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- African culture and customs were strongly abused by the DRC.

- Africans lost their lives since they were constantly attacked by the Boers on Several occasions.
- Africans got their own priests to preach according to their culture.
- Africans received British support and protection from the Boer mistreatment.
- Africans became poor and poorer due to the DRC.

ON THE WHITES

- The DRC spread Christianity among the Dutch settlers.
- The DRC led to the rise of hard-liners e.g. Paul Kruger.
- The presence of the DRC in South Africa attracted missionaries from Britain to out compete it.
- The Boer culture was preserved and promoted in South Africa.
- The Boers became more proud and arrogant as they were granted encouragement by the DRC.
- Boers acquired more liberty and freedom that was granted to them by their church.
- The Boers exploited a lot of African resources as they were encouraged by the Church.
- The DRC promoted marriages among the Boers only.
- The whites became contented that South Africa was their Canaan i.e. promised Land.
- The Dutch Indian Company got financial and administrative support.
- Social services were acquired by the Boers e.g. medical, education services and others.
- The Boers grabbed African land because they got encouragement from the church.
- The converted Boers received the sacrament of Baptism.
- The Boer way of life was introduced in South Africa.
- The whites discriminated themselves from the blacks.

INDEPENDENT CHURCH MOVEMENTS

- These were Churches which broke away from the missionary controlled Churches and they were formed and led by Africans.
- These Churches came up in the 19th and 20th centuries.
- They were also called separatist or break away or African initiated Churches.
- Membership to these Churches was open to all the Black Africans.
- There were mainly three types in South Africa i.e. the Ethiopian, Zionist and Messianic Churches.
- The Ethiopian Churches were formed after the **Adowa Incident** of **1896** in which Ethiopia defeated the Italians who had tried to colonize them.
- The Messianic Church taught about the coming of the “**Black Jesus**” or “**Messiah**” and it was led by **Isaiah Tshembe** - the Zulu Messiah.
- There was also the Natal Church which was led by **Nathanile Tile**.
- The Zionist Church was led by **Inginisi**. This church was made up of Puritans and was supported by the Blacks in America.
- By 1913, there were over 30 different Ethiopian churches in South Africa.

WHY WERE INDEPENDENT CHURCH MOVEMENTS FORMED

- They were formed to fight against political discrimination of the Africans.
- They were formed due to conflicts over church leadership between African leaders and whites.
- They were established because the white missionaries were segregative in their churches. For example, they did not promote the black converts to responsible positions in their churches.
- The need to defend African culture that was not respected by the missionaries led to formation of independent churches.
- The expectation of a “**Black Messiah**” made the Africans to form their own churches. This expectation was due to a belief that Jesus was not sent for the Blacks.
- The long and complicated process of conversion to Christianity within the missionary churches forced the Africans to form their own churches. For example, one had to first be baptized before becoming a Christian.
- Africans wanted to fight for their independence that was being threatened by the whites thus forming Independent churches.
- They wanted to fight against white oppression and mal-administration in South Africa.
- Africans hated racial discrimination in the white churches.
- The rise of African nationalism also played a role in the rise of independent churches. The Africans at this time felt proud and confident that they could handle or run their affairs.
- The Ethiopian defeat of Italians at **the battle of Adowa in 1896** increased Ethiopianism hence independent churches.
- They were also formed due to the long period of training to priesthood which the Africans hated.
- The work of the black Americas who formed their churches in America inspired the South African blacks to also form their own churches.
- European missionaries set harder conditions for Africans to enter church e.g. one had to deposit lump sums money which forced them to form their own churches.
- Influence of Pan-Africanism engineered by Blacks also led to the formation of Independent Churches.
- The need to provide education by Africans to the fellow Africans led to Independent churches since whites didn’t cater for them via education.
- Low wages and salaries given to African priests also led to formation of Independent churches.
- The rise of charismatic African leaders like **Isaiah Tshembe** and **Nathanile Tile** who provided leadership led to the formation of the African Independent churches in South Africa.

PROBLEMS FACED BY INDEPENDENT CHUCHES

- They faced a problem of illiteracy among the Africans who could not read and write.
- They lacked enough funds to carry out their activities like setting up schools.

- They faced opposition from the main stream churches of the white missionaries.
- They lacked enough books for the African converts to read.
- The tribal differences among the Africans divided up the African Independent Churches.
- They faced hostility from the Dutch or Boers who did not like their activities.
- The religious differences among the Africans themselves between the Protestants and the Catholics affected the work of the African Independent Churches.
- They also lacked strong leaders especially in their early stages of development.
- The divide and rule policy introduced by the whites in South Africa through the Bantustans also divided up their people.
- The churches were seen as an African aspect, hence making everything about them to be taken to be inferior and backward.
- The economic and social backwardness of the African societies affected the activities of the churches.
- They also lacked support from the political leaders in South Africa.

ACTIVITIES OF THE INDEPENDENT CHURCHES

- They built a number of churches in South Africa.
- They spread Christianity to the Africans which made them join churches.
- The churches ordained many African priests.
- They criticized and condemned the white man's exploitation of African resources e.g. land, labour etc.
- They promoted unity among Africans.
- They prepared Africans to struggle for their independence.
- They condemned racial segregation of the whites.
- They promoted African culture and ways of life e.g. dressing, language etc.
- They promoted African leadership in churches i.e. Africans became Bishops.
- They constructed day-schools for the Africans thus teaching them how to read and write.
- They condemned the Apartheid policy that segregated the Blacks in South Africa.
- They preached that Africa belonged to the Africans.
- They inspired Africans to rise up against the Whites e.g. Anglo-Zulu war, Bambatha, Nama-Herero etc.
- They made Africans aware that the white man is an enemy.
- They improved the economic set up of Africans.
- They promoted African culture through their teachings as opposed to those of the missionaries.

THE CONTRIBUTION OF THE AFRICAN INDEPENDENT CHURCHES TO THE HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA

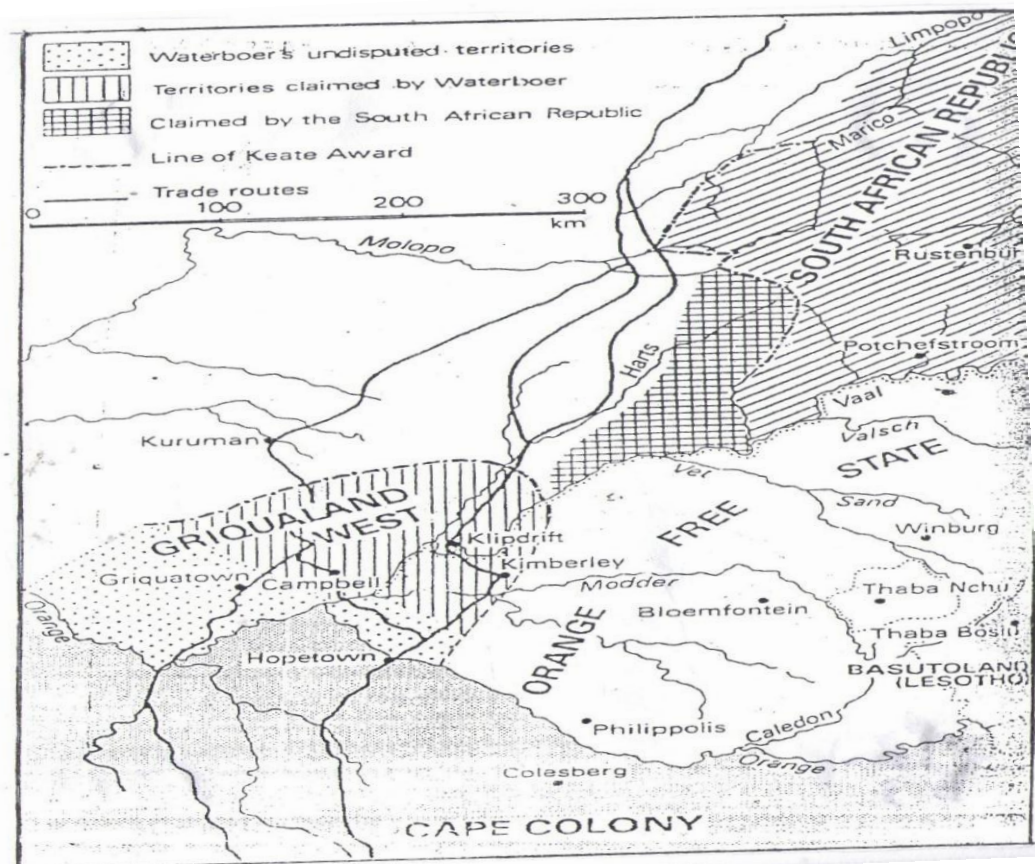
- Most of these churches looked outwardly religious but inwardly they were political.
- They preached against grabbing of African land by the Europeans.

- They preached against forced labour and enslavement of the Africans by the Europeans.
- They preached violently against white oppression or mistreatment of Africans.
- They preached and opposed against racial segregation and Apartheid.
- They trained African clergymen (priests and bishops) and empowered them to believe in themselves. For example, there was Bishop Desmond Tutu who played a major role in the liberation of South Africa.
- The churches worked with other nationalists to liberate South Africa from the Apartheid regime. For example, there was Nelson Mandela, Robert Sobukwe and Albert Lithuli among others.
- They also showed that the Africans were capable of managing their own affairs without supervision from the Europeans.
- They promoted African nationalism (the desire for independence) among the Africans.
- They translated the Bible into African languages.
- They made Africans hostile against colonialism. This was through making the Africans politically conscious or enlightened.
- They provided a platform for the African nationalists to decampaign and reject white rule. For example Desmond Tutu used these churches to attack the Apartheid system in South Africa.
- They influenced the outbreak of African rebellions like the Bambata rebellion of 1906 and the Nama – Herero of 1904 – 1907 in Namibia.
- They made the Africans aware that the whites were hostile towards them and that the whites were after exploiting them.
- They sent out representatives to the outside countries like USA to decampaign for African independence.
- They built day schools which provided Africans with practical skills that enabled the Africans to acquire jobs like the whites.
- They preserved African cultures through African music, poems and dances that were being practiced in these churches.
- They promoted African languages. For example, the Zulu opposed English, French and Latin in their churches.
- They preached that Africa was for Africans and therefore there was need for the whites to give independence to the Africans.
- They influenced the Africans to form political parties in South Africa. These political brought the Africans together and therefore helped to fight for independence.
- Through their preaching, they influenced the educated Africans to criticize colonialism in South Africa.
- They openly campaigned for African rights/freedom/ liberty without fear.
- They encouraged trade among the Africans.
- They showed that the Africans were able to select and adopt Christian teachings suitable to them.
- They even attracted some whites who helped them in the fight against white rule in South Africa.
- Many Africans joined them and by 1970, they had three thousand (3000) members.
- They exposed the European lack of care and consideration for the Africans.

THE MINERAL DISCOVERY AND MINING IN SOUTH AFRICA 1867 – 1886

- The term mineral revolution is used to refer to the discovery and exploitation of minerals from 1867-1884 or it refers to the political, social and economic changes that came with the discovery of minerals in South Africa.
- The first major discovery was of Diamonds in **1867** at Kimberly between River Vaal and River Orange.
- This was followed by the discovery of Gold at Witwatersrand around **1886** in Transvaal.
- Later on other minerals like Coal, Iron, copper, Manganese, Uranium, etc. ore were also discovered in South Africa.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING RIVAL CLAIMS TO THE DIAMOND FIELDS



THE SITUATION BEFORE THE DISCOVERY OF MINERALS IN SOUTH AFRICA

Describe the situation in South Africa before the discovery of minerals.

What were the main features of the economy of South Africa before the discovery of minerals?

How did the mineral discovery change the general lives of people in South Africa?

- Before the discovery of minerals in South Africa, there were two races that is the whites and blacks living in South Africa.
- The whites included the British at the Cape and Natal and the Boers who were in Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- Comparatively, the Africans were better off than the whites as shown below:

The Africans

- **Economically**, before the mineral discovery, the Africans were predominantly (majorly) cultivators and they grew crops like maize, beans and vegetables for home consumption.
- They also kept animals like sheep, goats and cattle.
- They carried out local trade as well as with the Europeans and barter trade was the medium of exchange.
- They raided their neighbours for cattle and food to strengthen their economy.
- Land was owned communally but the chiefs had control over it.
- They carried out iron smelting and made iron tools like hoes on a small scale.
- Some carried out hunting for their survival.
- They also carried out fishing from the surrounding rivers like River Tugela, River Vaal, Fish River etc.
- They had some industries but these were mainly agro- based.
- **Politically**, the Africans had a centralized system of administration e.g the Ndebele, Zulu and the Swazi. Therefore, they were stronger than most of the white communities outside the Cape.
- **Militarily**, though Africans were armed locally, they were better than the Boers.
- **Socially**, the African communities were more united behind their leaders compared to the Boers who were divided along religious and family lines.
- Africans lived with stable families and marriages. Men lived with their wives and children.
- Africans had an independent culture, own code of dressing, language and other ways of life.
- The level of education was low for both Boers and Africans.
- There was limited inter marriages because either parties avoided contact with one another.

The Whites

- The Boers were much poorer in the interior before the discovery of minerals.
- The Boers depended on primitive pastoralism and kept animals like cattle, goats and sheep for domestic use.
- The Boers owned land on an individual basis.
- The Boers controlled Transvaal and Orange Free State and they normally suffered from African opposition.
- Although they traded with the Africans, no major profits were got because of their racist attitude towards the Africans.

- The whites or Europeans had low levels of technology i.e. no machines and scientific methods of farming.
- There was poor transport and communication network between Natal and the Cape and between Transvaal and Natal i.e. the Boers used wagons or chariots as the major means of transport before the mineral discovery.
- However, the discovery of minerals changed the political, social and economic situation in South Africa.

THE SITUATION /CONDITIONS AFTER THE DISCOVERY OF MINERALS

- The discovery of Diamond in 1867 stimulated the discovery of other minerals e.g. Uranium, Tin and Manganese especially in Natal.
- Agriculture was transformed from being subsistence to commercial. Even Pastoral farming became commercialized.
- The economic control of South Africa shifted from the hands of Africans to those of the Europeans.
- Africans began to offer their labour services to the Whites i.e. they became migrant labours.
- There was improved transport and communication through the construction of the new roads, railway lines, bridges, telegraph lines etc.
- In 1887, the Transvaal-Delagoa railway line was constructed.
- In 1891, the Natal railway line was constructed and in 1892, the Delagoa-Pretoria line that went up to the cape was completed.
- Steamer ship companies were introduced in South Africa.
- Banks were established e.g. the Standard Bank plus the Orient Banking co-operation.
- Insurance companies were introduced to avoid loss of property and life unnecessarily.
- The discovery caused rapid urbanization since many towns mushroomed e.g. Pretoria, Durban, and Johannesburg.
- There was population growth due to the rise of a mining class of Uitlanders from Argentina, New Zealand and Canada.
- Africans began looking for highly paid jobs hence emergence of a cash economy.
- There was emergence of wealthy individuals e.g. Cecil Rhodes and Burnett who used the mineral wealth.
- Trading companies were established to carry out the mining business e.g. the Beers consolidated company and the British South African Company (BSACO).
- The discovery of minerals led to industrialization through the establishment of mineral processing, wine processing and many other factories.
- It led to rural urban migration as people left villages to mining centers.
- The health sector equally improved with the construction of hospitals, clinics and dispensaries around the mining centers.
- Africans were confined to slummy areas near mining areas e.g. Soweto.
- African states collapsed after disorganizing the political institutions e.g. Zulu state.
- African families broke down as men left their wives behind and went to mining centers as migrant workers.

IMPACT OF THE MINERAL DISCOVERY ON THE PEOPLE OF SOUTH AFRICA

ON AFRICANS

- The discovery of minerals brought many effects on the Africans which were positive and negative, political, social and economic.
- Africans got jobs in the mines, industries and agriculture that sprung up around the mining areas which improved the standards of living.
- African nationalism increased as Africans in the mines came together to fight for their freedom.
- It led to the formation of political parties to fight for African rights in the mines e.g. the South African Native Congress formed in 1912 which became the African National Congress (ANC).
- African agriculture was boosted as they got market to sell their agricultural products.
- Africans got guns using the money they got from the mineral wealth although they were of poor quality.
- There was rural-urban migration as Africans looked for jobs in towns around the mining areas like Kimberley, Pretoria and Durban.
- Africans became migrant workers as they left their families to go and work on contract in towns and mines.
- African families broke up as men over stayed away from their families working in the mines as migrant workers.
- Africans lost land where minerals were discovered and they were displaced into reserves and dirty towns like Soweto.
- Africans suffered the poor conditions in slums like congestion and diseases.
- Africans suffered from the high costs of living in towns and they became criminals in the slums.
- Africans were discriminated by the whites in employment as they were only left to offer unskilled labour.
- Africans were relegated to second class citizens as the whites emerged superior in South Africa.
- It laid ground for the rise of apartheid in South Africa in 1910 when the whites joined hands to discriminate against Africans in all spheres.
- African agriculture declined as many of them moved to towns to look for better jobs in mines.
- Africans suffered from famine due to neglect of agriculture with people moving to towns for better jobs.
- Some Africans working in the mines lost their lives in mining accidents leading to depopulation.
- Africans who moved to towns and mining areas lost their cultures and adopted western cultures like dressing.
- Some Africans adopted bad European acts like prostitution, smoking, drinking and gambling.
- African rulers lost their political powers as their subjects were instead respecting the whites who had authority.

- Some African states like Basuto and Swaziland were annexed by the whites leading to loss of independence.
- Africans lost support of the British who abandoned them in favour of the Boers.
- African societies attempted to resist white take over but were defeated hence decline of their military power.
- African conflicts with whites increased leading to wars like the war of guns in 1880.

EFFECTS ON WHITES

- The discovery increased Boer nationalism and they became more proud and arrogant
- It forced the Boers to unite against the British in order to protect their mineral wealth
- It led to the rise Powerful Boer leaders like **Paul Kruger** and **Thomas Burghers** who came up to guard the mineral wealth and Boer territory.
- The Boers became richer and wealthy than before the discovery of the minerals and their standards of living increased.
- The Boers started getting international recognition due to control of the mineral wealth.
- The Boers were put into an industrial revolution as many manufacturing and agro-processing industries were set up in the mining areas.
- Boer states emerged from being Poor to being wealthy due to mineral discovery.
- The Boers of Transvaal began taxing heavily the rich gold mining companies like the Beers consolidated company to raise revenue.
- It led to specialization among Boer republics with Natal taking on agriculture yet Orange Free State and Transvaal were for mining and industry.
- The Boers got employment opportunities in mines and industries.
- The Boers became politically strong since they bought better guns that strengthened their military power.
- The Boers began attacking neighbouring African societies as well as the British whom they fought in Anglo-Boer war 1 of 1880-81 and Jameson raid of 1895.
- The Boer communication network improved with many telephone lines, telegrams among others.
- The Boers took on commercial agriculture which improved their economic status further.
- The transport network in the Boer republics was improved with roads, bridges and railway lines built like Transvaal railway of 1891.
- The whites became controllers of South African economy replacing the Africans.
- Foreign exchange earnings of the Boers increased due to increased exports of diamond and gold.
- Social infrastructures were improved in the Boer republics like schools.
- Banks also came up like Orient and standard chartered bank in South Africa.
- Bad practices like theft, prostitution and alcoholism increased in the Boer republics.
- The Boer farms experienced shortage of labour as Africans ran to work in the mines where they anticipated fatty jobs.
- It led to temporal loss of independence by the Boers to the British who annexed Transvaal in 1877.

- It increased British interest in the interior and they started to defend the interest of the Uitlanders.
- The British invested a lot of capital in South Africa like Cecil Rhodes who set up the British South African company to carry out mining.
- Towns sprung up in the Boer republics such as Kimberly and Vereeniging.
- International trade was promoted between the Boer republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State with the outside world.
- Land became expensive in the Boer republics around the mines since it was highly demanded for agriculture and industry.
- The Boers rejected the British federation plan as they did not want to share their mineral wealth with the British.

POLITICAL EFFECTS OF THE MINERAL DISCOVERY IN SOUTH AFRICA

- It changed the balance of power in South Africa for example, among the British, the Boers and the Africans i.e. the whites became politically and militarily stronger than the Africans.
- It led to the colonization of the African states like Swaziland, Botswana, Lesotho and Griqualand West by the British.
- The African rights were restricted. For example, the Africans lost their voting rights.
- It increased African nationalism as the Africans in the mines came together to fight for their freedom and independence. This led to the formation of political parties like the South African Native Congress in 1912 that later became the **African National Congress (ANC)**.
- The African rulers became powerless because they lost their political powers i.e. Africans stopped respecting their local leaders since they had no authority.
- The military power of the Africans was completely destroyed. It is true that Africans acquired guns but they were of poor quality as compared to those of the Whites.
- It increased conflicts between the Africans and whites, thus leading to wars like the **Bambata rebellion of 1906**.
- The Africans were no longer depending on the British for protection as it was before i.e. the British stopped protecting the Africans against the Boer mistreatment.
- The enmity between the African and the whites worsened as the whites became richer than the Africans.
- The discovery gave the whites political and military advantage over the Africans i.e. they became stronger than the Africans.
- It increased the enmity between the Boers and the British since each of them wanted to control the mineralized areas in South Africa.
- The Boers started getting international recognition from major powers like Germany. This was because the minerals had been discovered in the Boer areas like Transvaal.
- It increased Boer nationalism and the desire to defend their independence especially from the British.
- It led to the rise of a new generation of Boer leaders like President **Paul Kruger** of Transvaal and President **Thomas Burghers** of Orange Free State to promote the Boer interests.
- It increased the British desire to spread her imperialism in the mineralized areas.

- The British policy of following and surrounding of the Boer controlled territories increased after the discovery of minerals.
- It increased the British desire for a political federation or union of South Africa championed by men like Lord Carnarvon, Cecil Rhodes among others.
- The discovery led to the downfall of **President Pretorius** of Orange Free State who was succeeded by **President Thomas Burghers** whom the Boers thought could withstand pressure from the British.
- The discovery of minerals resulted into the British annexation of the Boer Republics like Transvaal in 1877 thinking that all areas in South Africa had minerals.
- They led a delegation or team to London to demand for freedom and independence. However, the British rejected their demand and therefore the Boers returned home empty handed.
- The discovery forced Boers to adopt a military solution against the British in 1880 - 1881 and this resulted into the First Anglo-Boer war.
- This war ended with the signing of the **Pretoria Convention or treaty of 1881**.
- The discovery of Gold discovery at Witwatersrand in **1884** in Transvaal attracted more foreigners into Transvaal who came to be branded by the Boers as Uitlanders.
- It resulted into the unsuccessful **Jameson raid in 1895** organized by Dr. Jameson and Cecil Rhodes which worsened the hatred between the two white parties.
- The discovery of minerals also led to the **Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902** in which the Boers were defeated by the British.
- The Second Anglo-Boer War ended with the signing of a treaty between the Boers and British in the city of **Vereeniging** on **31st May 1902** narrowed the gap between the two white races.
- On **31st May, 1910**, the **South African Union** was formed which ended the mineral competition between the two white communities.

ECONOMIC EFFECTS OF THE MINERAL DISCOVERY IN SOUTH AFRICA

- The Boers became richer and wealthier than before the discovery of minerals.
- The Boers enjoyed improved standards of living after the discovery of minerals.
- The capital investment of the Boers also increased because of the increased wealth from the minerals.
- Commercial Agriculture was developed, hence improving on the economic status of the Boers further.
- It led to the development of transport networks in the Boer Republics like roads, bridges and railway lines. For example, there was the **Delagoa-Transvaal Railway of 1887** as well as the **Natal -Transvaal Railway** of 1891.
- The Boer communication network also improved as many telephone lines and telegrams were built.
- New ports were built like Port Elizabeth and many steamer ships were established on Rivers which facilitated improved the transport network.
- The social infrastructures also improved. For example, schools and hospitals were set up using the money from the minerals.
- Banking facilities were also set up in South Africa after the discovery of minerals for example the Orient and Standard Banks.

- It emanated into the growth of towns like Pretoria, Johannesburg and Vereeniging in South Africa.
- It led to the development of international trade between the whites in South Africa and outside countries which increased foreign exchange earnings for the Boers.
- There was shortage of labour on the Boer farms as the Africans ran to work in the mines.
- The Boers got better employment opportunities in the mines and industries.
- The Boers were forced to unite with the British so as to protect their mineral wealth from the Africans.
- It led to the establishment of many industries in the Boer republics like Transvaal to process the minerals thus putting an industrial revolution in South Africa.
- The Anglo – Boer wars led to the destruction of property like farms, homes and businesses.
- It led to the coming of the British investors to South Africa like Cecil Rhodes who acquired a lot of wealth from the minerals.
- The British got skilled jobs in the mines and industries, hence improving their standards of living.
- The Africans became poor after losing control of their economy and mineral resources to the whites
- The Africans also got jobs in the mines and industries, hence improving on their standards of living.
- The Boers lost land for example near Griqualand to the British.

SOCIAL EFFECTS OF THE MINERAL DISCOVERY IN SOUTH AFRICA

- There was population pressure around the mining centres which led to land conflicts.
- The British abandoned their policy of supporting the Africans in favour of the Boers who were considered more powerful and better friends than the Africans.
- Some Boers lost lives in the mine accidents and the Anglo-Boer wars.
- Bad practices like theft, prostitution among others increased in the Boer republics among the poor Boers.
- The Africans started working for money and therefore mineral discovery introduced a cash economy in South Africa hence improving the standards of living.
- The Africans who got jobs in the mines were able to send their children to schools. This led to the emergence of a new class of African elites like Mandela, Albert Luthuli and Walter Sisulu among others who struggled for African freedom in South Africa.
- The local markets benefited some Africans to a small scale. For example, they got where to sell their agricultural produce which promoted Agriculture.
- It led to rural-urban migration as many people especially Africans moved to towns to look for jobs.
- It led to the development of a **migrant labour system** in South Africa.
- It led to the breaking up of African families as the men overstayed away from their families while working in the mines.
- It led to displacement of the Africans who were forced to live in reserves.

- It led to the development of dirty towns especially slums that surrounded the mines like Soweto. These were characterized by lack of good social facilities, congestion and poor living conditions.
- The Africans also suffered from various European diseases like cancer, thus causing a lot of misery and suffering to them.
- The crime rate in the shanty towns like Soweto was also high due to the high cost of living in such towns especially among the Africans.
- The Africans were discriminated by the whites in employment. For example, they were stopped from skilled work and were only supposed to offer unskilled, overworked and were paid low wages.
- There was enslavement and forced labour on the Africans and therefore, they were mistreated by the whites in the mines and industries.
- The white superiority over the Africans was confirmed. The Africans thus became second class citizens in South Africa and laid a foundation for the Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- Agriculture declined among the Africans societies as they rushed for better jobs in the mines, thus leading to famine.
- There was loss of cultures and traditional practices as many Africans adopted the European cultures especially those who went to the towns to look for jobs.
- Marriage among the Africans came to be postponed as people looked for money.
- Marriage also tended to be monogamous due to the high cost of living in the towns.
- The tribal differences among the Africans also disappeared for those who moved to towns since they came to live and work together.
- The African women in the towns acquired a high status as they got chance to interact with the rich white men.

HOW THE DISCOVERY OF MINERALS AFFECTED THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE BOERS AND THE BRITISH

- It increased the hatred and tension between the Boers for the British i.e. the Boers and British became enemies hence their relationship was hostile.
- The British at the Cape became jealous. They did not want to share the economic wealth brought about by the minerals.
- The British annexed the Diamond fields at Griqualand West where the minerals had been discovered which increased the enmity between the Boers and the British.
- The Boers were compensated 90,000 pounds for the loss of their land where the minerals had been discovered.
- However, the Boer Republics felt that they had been cheated by the British and their relationship with the British worsened.
- The British proposed the idea of federation (unity) of the Whites in South Africa which the Boers refused. This was because they feared that it was a trap to force them into British control.
- The increasing population of Uitlanders mainly coming from the Britain threatened the Boer control of the mining areas and their republics.
- They were fighting for voting rights, representation in administration and not paying taxes.

- The British also surrounded the Boer Republics by acquiring Botswana, Malawi and Zimbabwe.
- In 1877, the British annexed Transvaal Republic because they wanted to set free the Uitlanders who were mistreated by the Boers. This worsened the relationship between the Boers and the British.
- Due to the mineral discovery, the Boers and British fought each other in first Anglo – Boer War of 1880 – 1881, the Jameson Raid of 1895 and the second Anglo – Boer War of 1899 - 1902.

THE ANGLO-BOER WARS IN SOUTH AFRICA- THE BRITISH WARS.

THE FIRST ANGLO-BOER WAR 1880-1881 OR THE TRANSVAAL WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

- This was a war between the British and the Transvaal Boers which took place between 1880 and 1881.
- The war was referred to as the “White man’s war because it involved only the Whites.
- Others call it the Transvaal war of independence.
- The immediate cause was the taxation incident in which the Boer farmer failed to pay tax and his property was confiscated by the British in Natal.
- The Boers attacked the British and got back the property which annoyed the British and in December 1880 war broke out.

CAUSES OF THE 1ST ANGLO-BOER WAR OF 1880-1881

- The causes were both long term and short term, political, social and economic as written below;
- The British annexation of the Boer Republic of Transvaal in 1877 annoyed the Boers since they lost their independence hence the war.
- The 1877 Pedi attack on Transvaal weakened the Boers and this gave the British chance to occupy Transvaal in 1877 which greatly annoyed the Boers leading to a war.
- The British desire to protect their citizens (Cape bankers) who had lent their money to Transvaal Boers caused the first Anglo-Boer war.
- The British attempt to unite the white Republics in South Africa into a federation (union) by force annoyed the Boers hence leading to the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- The desire to prevent any Zulu attack on the Transvaal Boers caused the war since the British were forced to occupy Transvaal which annoyed the Boers.
- The Anglo – Zulu war of January 1899 at Isandhlwana encouraged the Boers to fight the British because they thought that the British had been weakened by the Zulu.
- Over taxation caused the war: The Boers were being over taxed by the British and on the other hand, Paul Kruger during his time, he had also over taxed the Uitlanders hence the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- The rise of the Boer nationalism (desire for independence) caused the 1st Anglo Boer war since the Boers were determined to defend their independence at all costs.
- The long term hatred and hostility (enmity) between the Boers and the British caused the 1st Anglo Boer war.

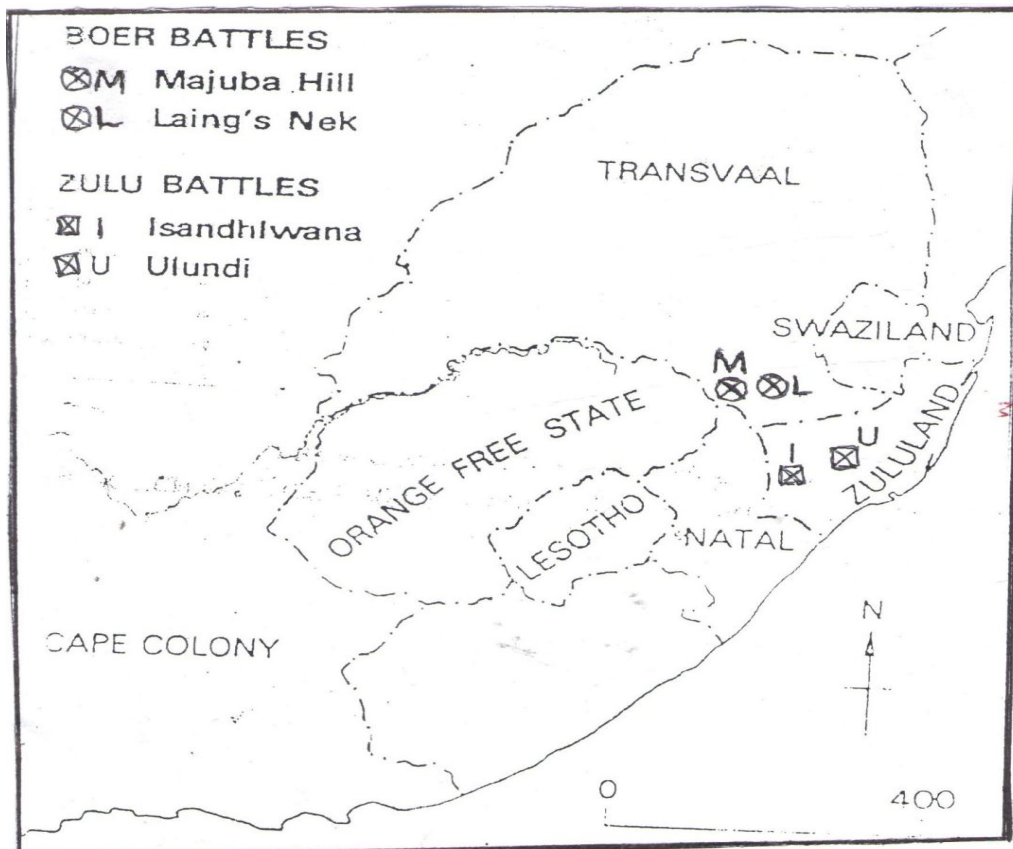
- The economic prosperity of Transvaal which had started carrying out small scale industrialization invited the British which caused the war.
- The British policy of following up the Boers left them with no alternative but to fight hence the first Anglo-Boer war.
- The rise of the British imperialism (desire to control the whole of South Africa) promoted by men like Cecil Rhodes caused the war because the Boers were against it.
- The failure of Gladstone (influence British prime minister) to give the Boers of Transvaal independence yet he had promised them freedom during the campaigns annoyed them hence causing the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- The rise of uncompromising leaders like Joubert and Paul Kruger on the side of the Boers and Carnarvon plus Cecil Rhodes on British side. These men encouraged their sides to fight each other hence causing the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- The discovery of minerals in South Africa caused the war because both the Boers and the British wanted to control the mineral wealth especially in Kimberly and Witwatersrand.
- The re-establishment of Transvaal Republic by the Boers on 5th December 1880 with Paul Kruger as the president and Joubert as the commander in chief annoyed the British hence increasing the war fever.
- The mistreatment of the Uitlanders by Paul Kruger further annoyed the British hence the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- It was also caused by personal misunderstandings between Cecil Rhodes and Paul Kruger who failed to compromise with each other.
- The immediate cause was the taxation incident in which the Boer farmer failed to pay tax and his property was confiscated by the British in Natal. The Boers attacked the British and got back the property which annoyed the British and in December 1880 war broke out.

THE COURSE OF THE 1ST ANGLO BOER WAR

- The war began in December 1880 and ended in February 1881.
- After the failure of peace, **600** Boers met at **Wonderfontein** to prepare for war against the British in 1879.
- A three-man's committee of Kruger, Pretorius and Joubert was appointed to run the country.
- The British then confiscated the property of the Boer farmers who had refused to pay tax.
- A group of 300 Boers attacked the British and got back the property of their colleague and this sparked off the 1st Anglo Boer war.
- On 8th December, the British lost the first battle.
- On 8th December, the Republic was secretly re-established with Kruger as the President and Joubert as the commander in chief.
- Then on 16th December, the independence flag was flown marking the completion of the struggle to get back the Boer independence.
- On 20th December 1880, the British lost the battle when they lost over 200 men.
- General Colley then rushed from Natal with re-enforcement and attacked the Boers at Lang's neck.

- Unfortunately for the British, the Lang's neck was well defended by the Boers and the British were expelled. Pomeroy Colley then lost the Lang's neck battle and rushed to defend Majuba.
- Then at Majuba, the British led the Boers to climb the Hill on which the British had bases.
- Later, the British failed to defend the hill and lost many soldiers including Sir Pomeroy Colley.
- By February, the Boers had defeated the few British soldiers in Transvaal.
- It was by ambush and sudden attack that the British forces were attacked.
- By August 1881, the two agreed to stop the war by signing the Pretoria treaty.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE 1880-81 ANGLO-BOER WAR



EFFECTS OF THE 1st ANGLO-BOER WAR

- The British were defeated by the Boers at Lang's neck and finally Majuba hills in February 1881.
- There was heavy loss of life especially on the side of the British who lost over 200 soldiers.
- The war led to the destruction of property especially farms, residences etc.

- It disrupted trade in the region. After the war, the Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods in Transvaal.
- It promoted Boer unity since the Boers of Orange Free State promised to help the Transvaal Boers in future.
- The rights of Uitlanders were to be protected by the Boers in Transvaal after the war.
- It increased the Boer nationalism as the Boers looked for more wins after their success over the British.
- It increased the enmity between the British and the Boers.
- It inspired the outbreak of more Anglo-Boer wars like the Jameson Rand of 1895 and the 2nd Anglo-Boer war of 1889-1902.
- It led to the signing of the **Pretoria convention** or **Treaty of 1881**
- It led to restoration of Transvaal's independence under **Paul Kruger**.
- The war postponed the federation plans attempted move to form a white union in South Africa.

THE PRETORIA CONVENTION OF 1881

- This was the **understanding** or **treaty** that ended the 1st Anglo Boer war of 1880-1881.
- It was in August 1881.
- It was between the two warring factors (groups) i.e. The British and the Boers.
- The new British government of Prime Minister Gladstone was tired of the war and therefore he pressed for a peaceful resolution.
- The treaty was to try to calm the Transvaal Boers so that they could support the British Federation plans.
- Paul Kruger and Joubert signed and accepted the peace terms on behalf of the Boers.
- The treaty was signed in the capital of Transvaal Pretoria, North of the bigger town of Johannesburg.

TERMS OF THE PRETORIA CONVENTION

Describe the terms of the Pretoria convention of 1881.

- The Treaty had the following terms as written below;
- Transvaal was to lose her independence to the British.
- Transvaal was granted complete self-governance or independence in all the internal matters.
- The Transvaal Boers had to accept the British Flag and authority of their Majesty the Queen of England.
- The foreign affairs of Transvaal were to remain under the British control.
- The Boers' internal affairs were to be supervised by a British officer based at Pretoria.
- Equal civil rights were extended to all people i.e. the rights of the Uitlanders were to be protected.
- Slavery was to be prohibited/ stopped. The Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods.

- There would be free right of entry to the British subjects in Transvaal.
- Though Transvaal was given independence, she was to remain answerable to the Cape colony.
- Big companies that were to invest in Transvaal had to seek permission from the Cape colony.
- Trade restrictions between the Boers and the British were to be removed and goods to move freely.

WHY THE PRETORIA CONVENTION WAS CALLED IN 1881.

Why was the Pretoria convention called in 1881?

- The Pretoria convention was held at Pretoria in 1881.
- It was held after the Boer victory at Majuba in the 1st Anglo-Boer war.
- It was attended by Paul Kruger and Joubert of the Boers.
- The British were represented by Lord Evelyn Wood the one who replaced Colley.
- It was called to provide a long lasting solution to the Anglo-Boer conflicts.
- It was aimed at creating unity among the two white communities.
- It was called to create economic co-operation in terms of trade and commerce.
- It was called to discuss the question of the rights of the Africans.
- It was aimed at determining the destiny of Uitlanders.
- The Pretoria convention was called to discuss the use of mineral resources among the whites.
- It was also called to settle the racial question among the whites.
- The British pushed it to contain Boer nationalism which was on the increase.
- It was called in order to determine the political destiny of Transvaal.
- It was aimed at solving boundary problems between Transvaal and her neighbours.
- The British called it to persuade the Boers to accept a Federation initiated by Gladstone the prime minister.

RESULTS OF THE PRETORIA CONVENTION OF 1881

- The convention reduced the enmity between the Boers and the British by granting self-governance in the internal affairs to Transvaal Boers.
- The Boers were dissatisfied with their new colonial status they became a colony of the British.
- The Boers lost their independence to the British.
- It led to the rise of Afrikaner (Boer) nationalism and increased their desire for independence.
- The Boers of Transvaal united as a result of Pretoria Convention.
- It gave rise to Paul Kruger and Joubert who were supported by the Boers of Transvaal so as to bring about independence from the British.
- It created unity between the Boers of Orange Free State and the Boers Transvaal to defend the Boer values and cultures that were threatened by the British.
- Even the Boers at the Cape developed sympathy between their linesmen /colleagues beyond River Vaal.

- The Boers continued opposing the federation scheme of the white races.
- The mistreatment of Uitlanders by the Boers resumed in South Africa.
- It left both parties angry and not satisfied since no one was a clear beneficiary.
- It laid a foundation for more Anglo-Boer wars/conflicts e.g. the Jameson raid of 1895 and the 2nd Anglo-Boer war of 1899-1902.
- The terms of the convention made the Boers more suborned and determined to resist the British Federation Union plans.
- It led to a new **London treaty of 1887** on which the Boers and the British agreed to the following;
 - The queen was no longer the Suzerain (ruler) of Transvaal.
 - The British were to drop their normal control (indirect control) over the local affairs of Transvaal.
 - The two Boer republics of Stellaland and Goshen were to remain out of Transvaal.
 - The trade between the two parties (British and the Boers) was liberalized (made free)
- The treaty made the Boers to continue interfering in the Zulu politics.
- The Boer soldiers under Lukas Meyer intervened and overthrew Dinizulu replacing him with his exiled father Ceteswayo.
- The Zulu lost almost half of their land to the Boers since the British never intervened in the local affairs of the Boers.
- It led to the rise of Cecil Rhodes who was determined to silence the Transvaal Boers.
- Both the whites and the Africans lost property in the conflicts that developed between the Boers and the British after the Pretoria convention.
- The treaty encouraged the Boers to associate more with the Germans and the Portuguese in order to counterbalance the idea which the British threats.
- It weakened the Zulu further hence confirming their loss of independence.

THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895

- It was a conflict between the Boers under Paul Kruger and the British under Cecil Rhodes.
- It was mainly because of the misunderstandings between the Transvaal Boers and the Uitlanders.
- The Uitlanders were mainly British citizens (foreigners) who were in Transvaal as business men and workers.
- The increased number of the Uitlanders who made up three quarters of Transvaal population worried the Boers.
- The leaders of the raid on the side of the British were Lt. Cecil Rhodes and Dr. Jameson.
- Paul Kruger, the Transvaal president led to the Boers against the British.
- The chief planner of the raid was Cecil Rhodes, the Prime Minister of the Cape Colony.
- The raid aimed at overthrowing the government of Transvaal under Paul Kruger.

CAUSES OF THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895

- The defeat of the British by the Boers in the First Anglo-Boer war at Majuba Hills in 1881 annoyed them thus desired to revenge on the Boers.
- The misunderstandings between Paul Kruger and Cecil Rhodes over the question of Uitlanders caused the raid.
- The increasing number of the Uitlanders in Transvaal worried the Boers i.e. by 1895, three quarters of the population were Uitlanders.
- The mistreatment of the Uitlanders by Paul Kruger caused the raid e.g. denied the Uitlanders voting rights.
- The denial of Uitlanders the right to speak English in public places which was their mother language caused the raid.
- The Uitlanders were angered by the system of awarding fat contracts only to the Dutch companies.
- The denial of Uitlanders citizenship also caused the raid i.e. for any Uitlander to become a citizen, he had to first stay in Transvaal for over ten years.
- The forcing of Uitlanders' children to study in Boer-dominated schools also caused the raid.
- The Uitlanders' appeal request for help from Cecil Rhodes and Jameson in their struggle for their political and civil rights caused the raid.
- The need by the Boers to safe guard their economic independence from the British caused the raid.
- The economic rivalry and enmity between two groups caused the war e.g. Paul Kruger over taxed the Uitlanders' goods which created enmity.
- The discrimination of British goods by Kruger in Transvaal also caused the raid.
- The long term enmity between the Boers and the British in South Africa since the days of the Great Trek caused the Jameson Raid of 1895.
- The scramble for minerals like gold and diamond in South Africa between the Boers and the British caused the raid.
- The rise of Boer nationalism promoted by strong Boer nationalists like Paul Kruger caused the raid.
- The smuggling of arms into Transvaal by Cecil Rhodes scared the Boers leading to the raid.
- The rise of British imperialism promoted by Cecil Rhodes i.e. the desire to control the whole of South Africa including Transvaal by the British caused the raid.
- The uitlanders opposed the corrupt and inefficient government of Paul Kruger there by increasing the conflict.
- The role of the press e.g. Flora Show the Editor of the "London Times" newspaper in Britain encouraged the British government to fight the Boers hence the Jameson raid.
- Cecil Rhodes' determination to bring Transvaal under the British control by force caused the raid.
- The formation of the British South African Company (BSACO) in 1890 by Cecil Rhodes worried the Boers in Transvaal which led to the conflict.

- The British desire to unite the white republics caused the raid because Paul Kruger had refused the idea e.g. he had refused the idea of a customs union with the Cape Colony.
- The Pretoria convention of 1881 caused the raid because Paul Kruger failed to respect its terms like not to mistreat the Uitlanders.
- The refusal by the British to co-operate with the Boers over the railway system increased the conflicts between the two.
- Paul Kruger's act of changing railway routes from the Cape and Durban to Maputo (Mozambique) annoyed Cecil Rhodes hence the raid.
- The role played by Joseph Chamberlain, the British colonial secretary and Robinson Hercules, the British ambassador in South Africa. The two men exaggerated Transvaal threats to British interests in South Africa hence encouraging Cecil Rhodes to organize the raid in 1895.

EFFECTS OF THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895

- The British were defeated by the Boers and they surrendered at Dornkap, hence the raid was a failure.
- Cecil Rhodes was forced to resign as the prime minister of the Cape Colony.
- Sir Robinson Hercules was also recalled as the British High Commissioner or Governor at the Cape and replaced with Alfred Milner.
- Dr. John Jameson was captured alive leading to the Boer hatred towards the British in South Africa.
- The victorious Paul Kruger became more popular and he was re-elected as president of Transvaal in 1898.
- It increased Boer nationalism and determination to preserve their Independence.
- Their victory gave them a belief that they would defeat the British at all times.
- It increased the mistreatment of the Uitlanders in Transvaal by Paul Kruger.
- It was a humiliation / shame to the British worldwide since they had been defeated by a small state (Transvaal).
- It led to a close understanding co-operation between Orange Free State and Transvaal since they now had a common enemy (Britain).
- It destroyed the possibility of any federation or union between the two white communities in South Africa.
- It also led to the international isolation and condemnation of the British which affected international relations e.g. Kaiser (King), William II of Germany sent Paul Kruger upon his victory over the British.
- The raid worsened the Anglo-German relationship i.e. Kaiser (King) William II of Germany sent a congratulatory message to Paul Kruger upon his victory over the British.
- Kaiser William II of Germany encouraged the Transvaal Boers to import guns especially from Germany to defend their territory any future attacks.
- The failure of the raid encouraged the Shona and the Ndebele people of central Africa raise up against the British from 1896 – 1898.
- It increased the enmity between the British and the Boers.

- It led to the 2nd Anglo-Boer war of 1899 and 1902 as the British wanted to revenge against their defeat by the Boers in the Jameson raid of 1895.

REASONS WHY THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895 FAILED

- The refusal of Uitlanders in Transvaal to co-operate as they planned made the raid to fail.
- There was lack of proper co-ordination between the Uitlanders in Transvaal and Cecil Rhodes leading to the failure of the raid.
- There was poor planning and organization of the raid by Cecil Rhodes which led to its failure.
- Cecil Rhodes failed to convince the Uitlanders in Transvaal to rebel against the Boers which made the raid to fail.
- It failed because the British government did not fully supports the project / raid.
- The Uitlanders wanted to protect their businesses wealth yet Cecil Rhodes wanted to annex the Transvaal Republic.
- The lack of man power by the British e.g. Jameson entered Transvaal with a small army of about 500 soldiers which could not defeat the Boers.
- It failed because Paul Kruger had built a strong army from mineral wealth which was capable of defeating the British.
- The popularity of Paul Kruger in Transvaal made the raids to fail because it helped him to mobilize many Boers to go and fight.
- The economic strength of Transvaal led to the failure of the raid i.e. the state was able to finance any major war against the Boers.
- The failures of Cecil Rhodes to smuggle fire arms /guns to the Uitlanders in Transvaal as planned led to the failure of the raid.
- The stronger Boer nationalism and unity built by Paul Kruger led to the failure of the raid.
- The breakdown in communication made the raid to fail. This was because the Boers cut off telephone lines to the Cape.
- Lack of co-ordination among the raid plotters i.e. Dr. Jameson and Cecil Rhodes led to their defeat.
- The poor leadership of Dr. Jameson led to the British defeat. He was emotional, impatient and a mere doctor without any war skills.
- The British under estimated the Boer strength a blunder that led to their defeat.
- Lack of secrecy that Rhodes and Jameson's plans were leaked to the Boers made them to find a well-organized Boer force.
- The strong unity among the Boers made them to fight as a mass leading to the defeat of the British.
- The Boer's determination to safe guard their independence made them to fight tooth and nail until they defeated the British.
- The choice of wrong leadership led to the failure e.g. Jameson was a medical doctor leading soldiers.
- The arrest of Dr. Jameson and some of his men made other fighters to loose morals which led to the failure of the raid.

THE UITLANDERS

Who were the Uitlanders?

- There were rich people mainly Europeans who came to South Africa after the discovery of minerals to exploit the minerals.
- The Uitlanders comprised of the Australians, the New Zealanders etc. but most of them were from Britain and therefore they were British citizens.
- The word “Uitlanders” is a Boer word meaning foreigners. Their main area of settlement was the Boer Republic of Transvaal.
- Once in Transvaal, they dominated the economy of Transvaal, bought a lot of land and ended up becoming very rich. While in Transvaal, they lived in the Rand mining centers.
- The Uitlanders supported the British interests in South Africa and therefore, they were close to Cecil Rhodes.
- They later created a security threat to the Transvaal Boers under Paul Kruger.
- They were a group of people who had no political rights in Transvaal e.g. they had no right to vote members of parliament.
- They were responsible for the outbreak of the Anglo-Boer wars between 1880 and 1902.

JOHN CECIL RHODES 1853 -1902

Explain the contribution of John Cecil Rhodes to the history of South Africa.

- Cecil Rhodes was born in 1853 in England to a Clergy man.
- He was a leading British imperialist in South Africa.
- His dream was to follow the footsteps of his father.
- Unfortunately, his health was fragile i.e. he was sickly.
- He was forced to move to South Africa where he met his fortune later.
- At the age of 17 years, he joined his brother on a cotton farm in South Africa.
- This set the platform for the beginning of his fortune.
- When minerals were discovered, Cecil Rhodes managed to buy some mines in Kimberly.
- He later completed his self-sponsored degree in Oxford University.
- In 1881, Cecil Rhodes formed a mining company known as the De Beers Mining Company Limited.
- This company controlled almost all the South African diamond trade.
- Later he bought his rival company – Barney Barnato and therefore he became a monopolist.
- In 1881, he became a member of the Cape parliament.
- When gold was discovered in 1886 at Witwatersrand, Cecil Rhodes became one of the major players in the gold mining.
- He later climbed the ladders of leadership due to the influence of his friend Hofmeyer, the leader of the **Afrikaner Bond e.g.** in 1890 he became the Prime Minister of the Cape colony.

- Cecil Rhodes' greatest ambition was to have an expansion of the British power in Central and South Africa i.e. **"Painting the map of Africa red"**.
- He supported the federation plan of uniting South Africa under British control.
- He also fought German imperialism in South West Africa (Namibia) as well as the Portuguese influence in Mozambique.
- He conflicted with Paul Kruger of Transvaal in the struggle to determine the master of South Africa's politics.
- Rhodes also felt that Bechuanaland or Botswana should be under British control therefore, in 1886 the British declared a protectorate over Bechuanaland present Botswana.
- He blocked the British to gain control of more African land for example, Pondo land, Zulu land and Tonga land.
- He even blocked the Boer or Transvaal's expansion northwards.
- He always fought for the economic integration with Transvaal to allow free movement of goods and services.
- He supported the Uitlanders in their struggle for civil and political rights in Transvaal e.g. fair taxation, use of English, fair trial, fair business contracts.
- He even smuggled arms from Johannesburg to use them against Paul Kruger.
- He sought for the full support of the British Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain to fight for the civil rights of the Uitlanders.
- In 1895, he planned the unsuccessful Jameson Raid to promote British imperialism in South Africa.
- Later he resigned from his post as Prime Minister of the Cape after the failure of the Jameson Raid.
- Even his friendship with Jan Hofmeyer, the leader of the Afrikaner Bond collapsed.
- He resorted his whole life to the activities of the **British South African Company**.
- He had founded this company to support British imperialism in Central and South Africa.
- He even acquired permission from the British government to govern Rhodesia present day Zimbabwe.
- He set up a police force under his brother John Rhodes and Jameson to improve security in Botswana.
- He died in **1902** and was buried in Zimbabwe.

PAUL KRUGER 1825 – 1904

Explain the contribution of Paul Kruger to the history of South Africa.

- Paul Kruger was born in 1825 in the Cape Colony.
- He was a clever and determined young man.
- His childhood was full of hunting. That is why he never got meaningful education. The only book he ever read was a bible.
- He left the Cape during the Great Trek.
- At 12 years, he had participated in the Great Trek and this shaped his life and later actions in South Africa.
- He strongly hated the British from the bitter lessons of the Great Trek.

- He also had a passionate feeling to defend the Boer hard won independence at all costs.
- Paul Kruger's future actions were further shaped by his forceful personality and oratory speaking skills.
- He was always determined to keep the Boer values of racial prejudice and strong resistance against the British.
- During the early years of the Transvaal Republic, he commanded the Boers against African hostile groups like the Pedi resistance of 1877.
- He served in the Boer military units and he actively participated in the Great Trek wars. This made him to rise to the position of Commander General of the entire Transvaal by 1880.
- He led the Boer resistance movement against the British annexation of Transvaal in 1877.
- Together with Joubert, Paul Kruger led a Boer delegation to London to demand for Transvaal's independence, but unfortunately the request was rejected by the British.
- They were left with no alternative but to prepare for an armed rebellion against the British which took place in 1880-1881 i.e. the First Anglo Boer war.
- His victory over the British in this war won him great admiration and support from the Boers.
- He was then appointed together with Joubert and Pretorius to administer the country of Transvaal.
- Because of his popularity and respect among the Boers, Paul Kruger was elected as the President of Transvaal four times i.e. in 1883, 1888, 1893 and 1898.
- As leader of Transvaal, Paul Kruger pursued different ideas conflicting with those of Cecil Rhodes – the British Cape Prime Minister.
- He desired to make a united and strong Boer Republic governing the whole of South Africa.
- He hoped to extend its territory to the East Coast so as to be in direct contact with the outside world.
- Paul Kruger led to the famous Jameson Raid of 1895, where he defeated and embarrassed the British.
- The big number of Uitlanders threatened Paul Kruger's plans for a free united and independent Transvaal Republic without the British interference.
- To check and block the Uitlanders, he denied them their political and civil rights in Transvaal.
- He blocked the Uitlanders from voting or to be voted for.
- He did not allow them to be tried by the jury.
- They were also prevented from speaking English in public.
- He over taxed the British goods coming into Transvaal and were discriminated against by the Transvaal Boers.
- Paul Kruger closed all possible British routes to Transvaal in order to disorganize the British economy further.
- The Uitlanders' children were to study from the Dutch controlled schools.
- He built the Delagoa – Transvaal railway to connect the East Coast to Transvaal and also for Transvaal's economic independence.
- He used the wealth acquired from the Gold mines to build up his defense.

- He discouraged the use of the British Cape and Natal railways by increasing the transport fees on the Transvaal sections of those lines.
- He went to the extent of encouraging German imperialism in South West – Africa (Namibia).
- He therefore sought for a Boer – German alliance in order to frustrate Cecil Rhodes' dreams of Cape-Cairo links.
- Paul Kruger's government demanded for the immediate British withdrawal of their troops from Transvaal by issuing an ultimatum of 48 hours for them to leave towards the Second Anglo-Boer war.
- The British ignored the ultimatum (order) and he declared war on 11th October 1899.
- Paul Kruger and others led the Boers into the second Anglo-Boer war of 1899-1902.
- Paul Kruger was defeated leading to wide spread destruction of the Boer economy.
- In August 1900, Paul Kruger was forced to flee to Europe.
- He died on 14th July 1904.
- He left a legacy of a solid Boer civilization in the history of South Africa.

THE SECOND ANGLO BOER WAR OF 1899 – 1902

- It was a war fought between the British and the Boers. It is commonly known as the "Gentle man's war or the white man's war."
- It was the climax of the long term conflicts and enmity between the British and the Boers in South Africa.
- Fighting started in 1899 and ended in 1902.
- Fighting took place in all the major four colonies of South Africa i.e. Transvaal, Orange Free State, Natal and the Cape.
- The British forces were at first led by Alfred Milner, General Roberts and later Lord Kitchener.
- The Boers were led by Generals like Smuts, Hertzog, Louis Botha and Dewet.

CAUSES OF THE 2ND ANGLO-BOER WAR

- The causes were both long term and immediate as explained below;
- The long held hatred and enmity between the British and the Boers since the day of the Great Trek led to the 2nd Anglo Boer war.
- The determination of the Boers to defend their political and economic independence caused the war.
- The poor past military record of the British encouraged the Boers to fight the British again hence the second Anglo-Boer war.
- The increased number of the Uitlanders in the mines and towns of Transvaal threatened the Boer Independence leading to the war.
- The British struggle and competition to control the mineralized areas in Transvaal and Orange Free State annoyed the Boers hence the war.
- The British were angered by the Boer scheme of constructing a railway line connecting with Portuguese Mozambique thus cutting off trade with the cape.

- The British wanted to revenge the defeat of the British forces by the Boers in the 1st Anglo-Boer war of 1881 and in the Jameson Raid of 1895.
- The re-election of Paul Kruger as the president of Transvaal in 1898 increased conflicts as the British vowed to overthrow him leading to the 2nd Anglo Boer war.
- The age of the scramble for South Africa among the Europeans intensified the enmity. For example, the British had feared that the Germans who were already in Namibia would ally with the Boers to push them out of South Africa.
- The rise of British Imperialism and their desire to form a union of South Africa threatened the Boers leading to the second Anglo-Boer war.
- Paul Kruger denied the Uitlanders political and civil rights, burned English and closed British schools in Transvaal leading to war.
- The stationing of the British troops near Transvaal by Milner in preparation for war threatened Paul Kruger.
- Paul Kruger's Ultimatum (order) of forty-eight hours which required the British to withdraw all their forces from the Transvaal borders by 11th October 1899 led to the war when they refused.
- The British continuous attempt to follow up and surrounded the Boers in Natal, Transvaal and Orange Free State annoyed them e.g. they annexed Botswana in **1885** and Zululand in **1887** to block Transvaal. Similarly, the Cape Colony was in the South, Natal in the East and in the North the British had established Rhodesia.
- The failure by Paul Kruger to punish a Boer farmer who had killed a Uitlander caused the war.
- The congratulatory message sent by the German Emperor – Kaiser William II to Paul Kruger following the Jameson raid excited the Boers, hence encouraging them to provoke the British into war.
- The federation scheme headed by the British was opposed by the Boers thus causing conflicts.
- Presence of war mongers e.g. Paul Kruger, Chamberlain, Alfred Milner, Kitchener and Botha caused the war in 1899.
- The failure of the May-June 1899 Bloemfontein Peace Talks between the British official **Alfred Milner** and Paul Kruger over the issue of the Uitlanders in Transvaal led to war. Alfred Milder walked away in protest.
- The British formation of the South African Association to protect the rights of the Uitlanders in Transvaal scared the Boers, thus leading to war

THE COURSE OF THE 2ND ANGLO-BOER WAR

- The war was organized by Joseph Chamberlain, the British Colonial Secretary and Sir Alfred Milner, the British High Commissioner at the Cape Colony.
- In 1899, Alfred Milner stationed the British soldiers near the borders of Transvaal under President Paul Kruger.
- On 9th October 1899, Paul Kruger sent an **ultimatum** or order to the British giving them 48 hours to withdraw their troops or face war.
- Since the British wanted war, they refused to respond to the ultimatum and therefore war broke out on 11th October 1899, two days later.

- The British were so unprepared for the war since they had few troops within South Africa.
- On the other hand, the Boers were prepared since Orange Free State and Transvaal were united against the British.
- As a result, the Boers easily defeated the British at **Lady Smith** in Natal, **Kimberly** and **Mafeking** in the Cape Colony.
- Later on, when the British received reinforcement from England and India, the Boers were also defeated at **Magersfontein**, **Stromberg** and **Colenso**.
- The week in which the Boers were defeated was termed as the “**Black Week**”.
- Early in 1900, the Boers were again defeated as the British occupied the city of Bloemfontein in Orange Free State, Lady Smith in Natal, Pretoria in Transvaal and they annexed the Transvaal republic.
- Paul Kruger himself escaped to Europe in August 1900.
- From 1900, the Boers resorted to the guerilla war fare but even this failed.
- When Lord Kitchener replaced Lord Roberts as the new British Chief of Staff, he adopted the **scorched earth policy** aimed at weakening and defeating the Boer resistance once and for all.
- He therefore destroyed the Boer farms, crops, houses and killed their livestock.
- Concentration camps were set up by the British to accommodate the Boer civilians who were not willing to fight and also to facilitate “cleaning up” operations.
- The war ended with the signing the **Vereeniging Treaty of 1902**.

EFFECTS OF THE SECOND ANGLO – BOER WAR

EFFECTS THE AFRICANS

- There was heavy loss of lives where by over 14000 people including Africans, Boers and the British were killed which led to depopulation.
- A lot of property was destroyed like houses, crops and animals which weakened the South African economy.
- It led to a decline in agricultural production. As a result, there was shortage of food which led to famine making people to starve.
- The Africans who left their jobs in the mines to go and fight were punished on reporting back after the war.
- The Africans were disarmed by the whites and this made them defenseless. The responsibility of disarming the Africans was put in the hands of **Baden Powell**.
- The Africans lost any hope of getting back their independence.
- The British withdrew their support from protecting the human rights of the non-whites like the Blacks, coloureds and Indians.
- The Africans lost their voting rights.
- The Africans lost their land to the whites.
- The Africans were displaced and sent to reserves that later became **Bantustans**.
- The Africans were subjected to racial discrimination and this led to the establishment of Apartheid in South Africa.
- The movement of the Africans was restricted as the whites introduced the Pass System.

- The Africans were isolated from the politics of South Africa.
- It led to enslavement of Africans i.e. the Africans who were sent to reserves were forced to provide labour to the whites.
- There was also misery and suffering among the Africans due to the effects of the war like famine.
- The African cultures were undermined and therefore declined because of the influence of the foreign culture.
- The Africans lived in constant fear and insecurity.
- The Africans suffered from inferiority complex after the war.
- It led to the rise of African nationalism i.e. Africans later came out to fight for their freedom e.g. they formed political parties like the **African National Congress (ANC)** which eventually liberated South Africa in 1994.

EFFECTS ON THE WHITES

- The war led to the defeat of the Boers by the British for the first time.
- The Boers temporarily lost their independence to the British and the Boer states became British colonies.
- The economy of the Boers was disrupted, thus leading to poverty.
- The Boer farms, cattle, industries and homes were destroyed during the war.
- The Boer state of Orange Free State came to be referred to as **Orange River Colony** after the war.
- The war led to the signing the **Vereeniging Peace Treaty of 1902** in which the Boers emerged victorious because they successfully convinced the British to accept their demands.
- The treaty improved the relationship between the British and the Boers in South Africa through its terms.
- The war cleared way for the **1908 Draft Constitution** in South Africa which was drafted during the **1908 National Conference** held in the town of Durban.
- It cleared way for the **1910 South African Union**. This was because after the war, the two whites communities agreed to unite as brothers and sisters.
- The Boer prisoners of war were released and pardoned.
- The British agreed to compensate the Boers for the war damages. For example, they offered 3 million pounds to the Boers for economic recovery.
- It also led to the giving of 30 million pounds interest free loan to the Boers for economic rehabilitation.
- The British agreed to withdraw the protection of the African rights and freedoms which paved way for the Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- The British and Boers agreed to deny the Africans their voting rights and they blocked them from participating in national politics.
- The war increased the Boer unity and nationalism.
- The general economic prosperity that came with the discovery of the minerals was eroded by the 2nd Anglo-Boer war.
- It led to the formation of a **Reconciliation Committee** at the Cape to unite the Boers and the British.
- It led to the creation of concentration camps where the women, children and old Boer civilians were kept and they became prisoners of war.

- The war led to the end of the old generation of Boer leaders in South Africa. For example, President Kruger of Transvaal fled to Europe where he died in 1904.
- It brought in a new generation of democratic or liberal leaders like Louis Botha, Christian Smuts and Lord Kitchener.

THE VEREENIGING PEACE TREATY OF 1902

- It was a treaty signed on **31st May 1902** between the British and the Boers.
- It was signed to the end of the Second Anglo – Boer war of 1899-1902.
- It is also referred to as the “**After war**” treaty of 1902.
- It was signed in the small city of Vereeniging in the Transvaal Republic.
- The Boers were represented by their new leaders like General Smuts, Louis Botha, and Hertzog.
- The British were represented by Alfred Milner and Lord Kitchener.

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE SIGNING OF THE VEREENIGING TREATY OF 1902

- It was signed to end the second Anglo-Boer conflict.
- It was signed to end the long term conflicts between the Boers and the British.
- It was signed to find a solution over the official language to be used in South Africa.
- It was signed to decide on the issue of citizenship and voting rights in South Africa.
- They wanted to discuss the economic recovery programmes of Transvaal that had been destroyed during the war.
- The need for the British to operate freely in the Boer Republics led to the signing of the treaty.
- The British wanted to prevent the Germans from taking over Transvaal.
- It was called to discuss a way of containing African resistances staged against the whites.
- It was called to prepare way for federation and union of white states.
- It was also signed to settle the mineral rights between the British and Boers.
- The whites wanted to defend themselves against the Africans.
- The British had given up protecting the Africans, hence making the Boers to accept sitting on the same round table with the British.
- The British wanted to reconcile with the Boers after the Second Anglo – Boer war.

THE TERMS OF THE VEREENIGING TREATY

- The Boer Republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State were to lose their Independence and become British colonies.
- Transvaal’s name was to remain unchanged.
- Orange Free State was to become Orange River colony.
- All Boer states were promised independence.
- The British flag was to be hoisted and used in the Boer Republics.
- The Queen of England was to be the head of South Africa
- Both English and Dutch languages were to become official languages.

- Africans were not to take part in South African politics and they were even denied voting rights.
- The Africans who had deserted their work were to be severely punished.
- The Africans who had been captured were to remain prisoners until further notice.
- The British were to withdraw their troops from the Boer republics.
- The British were to give up their humanitarian role of protecting the non-whites like Africans.
- The Boers were to end their hostilities against the British.
- The Africans were to be disarmed so as to protect the political and economic interests of the whites in South Africa.
- The Boers were to retain some arms for defence against Africans.
- The British were to give 3 million pounds to the Boers as compensation for the losses incurred during the war.
- The British were also to give 35 million pounds as interest free loans to the Boers for development and rehabilitation after the war.
- The Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods in South Africa.
- There would be free trade between the British and the Boers.
- A British commissioner was to be put in charge of overseeing the affairs of the Boer Republics on behalf of the Queen of England.

EFFECTS OF THE VEREEGINING TREATY OF 1902

ON THE BOERS

- The Boer Republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State lost independence to the British.
- The Dutch and English languages were made official languages and they therefore acquired the same status.
- The Boers were compensated with three million (3,000,000) pounds for the losses incurred during the war.
- The Boers were given thirty five (35,000,000) million pounds free interest loans for rehabilitation and development after the war.
- It led to the release of the Boer prisoners of war who had been held in concentration camps by the British.
- It increased Boer nationalism and by 1908, people were demanding for Independence both in Transvaal and Orange River Colony.
- It led to the emergence of new charismatic and diplomatic Boer leaders e.g. Botha and smuts.
- It led to the granting voting rights to the Boers.
- Boer Republics of Orange Free State and Transvaal retained internal self-government.
- Boers began to intermarry with the British as a result of the treaty.

THE BRITISH

- The British were saved from the Boer hostility.
- It resulted into reconciliation between the British and the Boers.
- English became official language besides the Dutch language.
- Political destiny of South Africa came in the hands of Britain.

- The British abandoned their humanitarian role of protecting the rights of the non-whites.
- British lost financially three million (3) and thirty five million (35) pounds to the Boers.
- It led to the raising of the British flag in Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- It also resulted into the releasing of the British prisoners.
- It led to the adoption of the apartheid policy by the British in South Africa.
- It increased the market for British goods in South Africa.
- It led to the success of the British Federation scheme i.e. **Customs Union** was formed in 1906.

THE AFRICANS

- It confirmed the loss of African Independence since the Africans were ignored in the discussions.
- It led to the loss of African humanitarian protection by the British.
- It also led to the disarmament of Africans to zero level.
- It resulted into the displacement of Africans from their home land to concentration camps.
- There was misery and suffering amongst Africans.
- Africans became poor and poorer due to the treaty.
- It also led to the growth of African nationalism with the formation of African National Congress in 1912.

THE FEDERATION OF SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLICS

- Federation meant the coming together of white Republics to form one government.
- The Republics were Natal, Orange Free State, Cape Colony, Goshen land, British Kaffararia etc.
- The move was first suggested by Sir George Grey in 1854 though it was strongly resisted by the Boers.
- In 1874, Lord Carnarvon, a British secretary for colonies renewed union attempts but still he failed.
- The union move was also supported by Selbourne.

REASONS FOR THE FEDERATION AND UNION

- The union was intended to cure long period of friction between the Boers and the British.
- The union move was intended to end Anglo-Boer clashes (wars).
- The union would strengthen the British and Boers against other European rivals like the Germans.
- Federation was also aimed at strengthening the administration of South Africa.
- A white union was would strengthen them against African threats (enmity) especially the Bantu.

- A union would help to strengthen boundary disputes between the white Republics i.e. Orange Free State and Cape colony.
- There was a need to build a stronger white joint army that would provide security plus defeating Africans.
- The union would prevent unnecessary competition for mineral resources that would cause wastage in South Africa.
- The union would create a bigger market without tariffs and other trade restrictions hence allowing closer economic co-operation.
- A union was intended to deal with the increasing number of Indians in South Africa.
- The union was aimed at the adoption of a common racial policy against the Africans.
- The rise of compromising leaders like Selbourn favoured the federation because they persuaded other whites to accept.
- The union would strengthen South Africa and save her from being influenced and dominated by other European powers like Germany.
- It aimed at reducing the administrative costs by creating one central government in South Africa.
- To provide better services in education, health and communication.
- The British thought that the Boers were poor and therefore needed help financially.
- The British wanted to use the union to dominate the Boers and also extend their imperialism.
- Lord Carnarvon's success in causing the Canadian federation in 1867 inspired him to form one in South Africa.

FAILURE OF THE EARLIER FEDERATION ATTEMPTS

- They failed to agree on the type of government to form whether federal or unitary government. The Boers wanted unitary while the British wanted federal government.
- There were disagreements over who should be the president of the union.
- Continuous rivalry over mineral resources divided the two parties.
- They failed to agree on official language to use in South Africa.
- They also failed to agree on where to locate the capital of the union government.
- They also differed in racial policy i.e. the Boers were in for mistreatment of Africans and Uitlanders while the British for protection.
- Presence of hard-liners like Paul Kruger and Cecil Rhodes delayed the union.
- They also failed to agree on the nature of parliamentary representation and composition.
- Commercial competition in terms of taxes and tariffs still divided them.
- The Boers were proud people who believed that their race was pure and superior and never wanted to mix up with any other race.
- The British lacked home support and back up hence the failure of the federation attempts.
- They disagreed on which flag to hoist for a united government leading to the failure.
- African attacks diverted European attention from the union.
- Poor leadership also failed the union.
- Cultural differences between the British and the Boers could not allow them to come together.

- Anglo-Boer wars delayed the union i.e. the first Anglo-Boer war in 1880-1881 and the Second Anglo-Boer war in 1899-1902.
- The British annexation of Transvaal in 1877 angered the Boers leading to the failure of earlier federation.
- The violation of the Pretoria convention of 1881 divided the two white races further.
- The Jameson raid of 1895 increased enmity between the Boers and the British hence delaying the union.

THE NATIONAL CONVENTION OR CONFERENCE OF 1908

- The National Convention was also known as the National Conference of 1908.
- It was a meeting of the Boer and British representatives.
- Representatives came from the four white Republics of Natal, Orange River Colony, Transvaal and Cape.
- The representatives of the British came from the Cape and Natal whereas those of the Boers from Orange River Colony and Transvaal.
- The Boers were represented by Ex-Republicans like Botha, Smuts, Steyn and Dewet.
- Dr. Starvr Jameson represented the British in the meeting.
- Africans were not represented physically but the British claimed to have represented their interests. African absence meant the meeting not to be a national conference /convention.
- Even the racist White government in Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) sent representatives. The whites from Rhodesia were to act as observers and advisors.
- It took place in Durban in Natal from 12th October 1908 to 5th November 1908.
- It was a major step towards the closer union of South Africa because it drafted the famous **Union Bill of 1908**

WHY THE NATIONAL CONVENTION OF 1908 WAS CALLED IN SOUTH AFRICA

- The meeting was called to stop the outbreak of the Anglo – Boer wars again and find a lasting solution to the existing enmity between the two white communities.
- It was called to create lasting unity between the Boers and British.
- It was called to write or draft a **union constitution** for the whites in South Africa.
- It was called to unite the two white communities under one government.
- It was called to discuss the best way of mineral exploitation and utilization without competition.
- To sort out the inter-territory railway and custom differences that had caused conflicts between the British and the Boers.
- It was called to debate the nature of the voting rights in South Africa (Franchise) i.e. to decide on who would vote and not.
- The British desire to check on the increasing Boer nationalism led to the calling of the conference.
- The union would prevent possible Boer alliance with the Germans.
- It was called to determine the national language for united South Africa.

- It was called to determine the location of the capital city of the union government.
- The role of the Vereeniging Peace Treaty of 1902 which had reconciled the British and Boers paved way for National Convention of 1908.
- The meeting was called to clearly define the question of leadership in the Union Government.
- To determine the type of Government that suited South Africa i.e. between **Federalism** and the **unitary** system of Government.
- To reduce the costs of administration by putting the four white states under one administration.
- It was called to deal with the increasing number of Indians in South Africa.
- The whites wanted to discuss and fix one common pool of social services like roads, hospitals, railways etc.
- To end all the social and political differences between the Boers and the British hindering the union of South Africa.
- The end of conservative Boer leaders like Paul Kruger and the rise of new leaders like Botha, Smuts and Dewet who were willing to co-operate with the British.
- It was called to agree on the terms of trade, tariffs and customs.

TERMS OF THE NATIONAL CONVENTION

- The monarchy of England was to be the overall head of the Union.
- The Governor General was to represent the Queen in South Africa and had to be a man.
- The Governor General was to be helped by an elected Prime Minister.
- The Prime Minister was to be helped by a council of 10 (ten) ministers.
- It proposed one parliament for the Union Government.
- But this parliament was to have two Houses or Chambers i.e. the Upper House (Senate) and the Lower House (assembly).
- The Upper House (senate) was to serve for 10 years and then be re-elected.
- The lower House (assembly) was to serve for 5 years and then be re-elected.
- Only male whites above 18 years of age were to vote.
- The Africans were not allowed to sit in the Union Parliament.
- They were also not to vote at all especially in Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Only the rich Africans and those with a certain level of education were allowed to vote especially in Natal and Cape (British areas).
- Africans were to be second class citizens while the Europeans were to attain first class citizenship.
- Pretoria, the capital city of Transvaal was to be the seat for President and his cabinet. Therefore, it was the Executive capital.
- The Cape was to be the Parliamentary capital or city of the union government.
- There was to be one Supreme Court for the Union established at Bloemfontein in Orange Free State.
- Orange River Colony was to become Orange Free State i.e. was to be given independence.
- The British Northern territories of Rhodesia (Zimbabwe and Zambia), Botswana (Bechuanaland) and Lesotho (Basuto land) were to be part of the union.

- Both the Dutch and English languages were to be used as official languages.
- There would be free trade between the Boers and the British.

RESULTS OF THE NATIONAL CONVENTION OR CONFERENCE OF 1908

- It was a turning point because it was the first major step for a closer union of South Africa.
- The meeting led to the drafting of the union constitution of **31st May 1910** which had the following;
 - A unitary form government was to be adopted in South Africa.
 - Louis Botha became the first Prime Minister of the new union government.
 - The conference led to the loss of independence of the four Republics as they became provinces of the union. It ended the long term enmity between the Boers and the British and therefore the two former enemies became friends for the first time.
 - The Dutch and English languages became the official languages for the united government.
 - The entry to parliament by the non – whites was blocked.
 - The British Northern territories of Rhodesia (Zimbabwe and Zambia), Botswana (Bechuanaland) and Lesotho (Basutoland) became part of the union.
 - It confirmed the removal of voting rights of the Africans by the whites.
 - It laid a foundation for Apartheid in South Africa and the mistreatment of Africans.
 - It led to complete equality among the whites i.e. the Dutch and British races became equal.
 - It led to and misery and suffering among the Africans.
 - It increased poverty among Africans since they lost land and support of the whites.
 - As a result of the convention, the whites dominated the politics of South Africa.
 - It led to the rise of African nationalism as the Africans rose up to demand for their rights which they had lost in the National Convention of 1908.

THE SOUTH AFRICAN ACT OF UNION OF 1910

- The Act of union of 1910 was a constitution or document signed in 1910.
- It was signed to bring together the four white colonies of Orange Free State, Transvaal, Natal and Cape colony under one administration or government.
- This government came to be known as the Union of South Africa.
- The government was formed and it started operating on **31st May 1910** with **Louis Botha and General Smuts** as the leaders.

REASONS FOR THE FORMATION OF THE ACT OF UNION IN 1910

What led to the formation of the union of South Africa in 1910?

Why was the Act of union signed in 1910?

- It was to end the long term hostility or enmity between the Boers and the British.

- The British wanted to destroy the Boer Independence or Nationalism by bringing the Boers under their firm control.
- The Boers wanted to preserve their economic and political achievements. They realized that isolation would destroy their political and economic achievements.
- The granting of Independence to the Boers in Orange Free State and Transvaal by the British in 1908 promoted good relationships and therefore assured the Boers equality in the new union.
- The British feared that the Boers would co-operate with the Germans in Namibia and the Portuguese in Angola and Mozambique and force them out of South Africa.
- The signing of the Vereeniging Treaty in 1902 after the Second Anglo - Boer war paved a way for the union.
- To ensure free trade and therefore avoid unnecessary competition between the British and the Boers in the field of trade and commerce
- There was need for reconciliation between the Boers and British and therefore the treaty was signed to improve relations between the two.
- To stop the rising trend of African nationalism i.e. there was fear that the Africans who would rise up and throw the whites out of South Africa.
- The need to lower the administrative costs in the white areas by creating one administration led to the union of South Africa.
- The formation of a Customs Union between the Boers and British in 1903 led to closer co-operation between the two which led to a political union by 1910.
- The contribution made by the British personalities like Sir George Grey and Selbourne led to union of the white states in South Africa.
- The calling of the 1908 National Convention made it clear that a union had to be formed.
- There was need to adopt a common racial policy towards the Africans.
- There was a general fear of the increasing number of the Indians who had even started making political and economic demands.
- The disappearance of hard-liner Boer leaders who had opposed the idea like Paul Kruger led to the union.
- It was to create a large market in South Africa so as to encourage trade.
- The need to exploit South Africa's resources like minerals by the whites led to the formation of the union in 1910.
- The role played by the British personalities like Sir **George Grey** and **Selbourne** (the British High Commissioner to South Africa). They very much wanted the union of the white states in South Africa
- The occurrence of African revolts like the Bambata rebellion of 1906, gave a lesson to the white colonies that they had to unite so as to defend themselves from the Africans.

TERMS OF THE 1910 ACT OF UNION

- The terms of the Union were in line with leadership, voting, language, position on Non-Whites, distribution of towns as well as the status of South African neighbours.
- The monarchy of England was to be the overall head of the Union.

- The Governor General was to represent the Queen in South Africa and had to be a man.
- The Governor General was to be helped by an elected Prime Minister.
- The Prime Minister was to be helped by a council of 10 (ten) ministers.
- It proposed one parliament for the Union Government.
- But this parliament was to have two Houses or Chambers i.e. the Upper House (Senate) and the Lower House (assembly).
- The Upper House (senate) was to serve for 10 years and then be re-elected.
- The lower House (assembly) was to serve for five (5) years and then be re-elected.
- Only male whites above 18 years of age were to vote.
- The Africans were not allowed to sit in the Union Parliament.
- They were also not to vote at all especially in Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Only the rich Africans and those with a certain level of education were allowed to vote especially in Natal and Cape (British areas).
- Africans were to be second class citizens while the Europeans were to attain first class citizenship.
- Pretoria, the capital city of Transvaal was to be the seat for President and his cabinet. Therefore, it was the Executive capital.
- The Cape was to be the Parliamentary capital or city of the union government.
- There was to be one Supreme Court for the Union established at Bloemfontein in Orange Free State.
- Orange River Colony was to become Orange Free State i.e. was to be given independence.
- The British Northern territories of Rhodesia (Zimbabwe and Zambia), Botswana (Bechuanaland) and Lesotho (Basutoland) were to be part of the union.
- Both the Dutch and English languages were to be used as official languages.
- There would be free trade between the Boers and the British.

RESULTS OF THE 1910 ACT OF UNION IN SOUTH AFRICA

- It united all white states or Republics in South Africa under one administration.
- It restored peace in South Africa after many years of Anglo-Boer conflicts since the days of the Great Trek.
- It promoted the position of the whites in South Africa at the expense of the Africans.
- The Africans were put in an inferior position in relation to the whites i.e. they became second class citizens.
- The English and Dutch languages became the official languages in South Africa.
- There was loss of land by the Africans to the whites. This was through **Land Act of 1913** which was passed after the union.
- The Africans were pushed into reserves known as Bantustans after losing their land to the whites.
- The Africans were no longer protected by the British as the British gave up their policy of protecting the African rights and freedom in South Africa.
- It resulted into the creation of the Apartheid policy with all its evils in South Africa.
- It confirmed the loss of independence by the Africans. For example, they were denied voting rights.

- It led to the growth of shanty (towns) towns like Soweto and slums in which the Africans lived under poor conditions.
- African resources especially minerals were fully exploited by the whites.
- It promoted the economy of South Africa by abolishing trade restrictions across the borders of the four provinces.
- It led to rise of African Nationalism. For example, in 1912 the South African Native Congress which later became the **African National Congress** (ANC) was formed to fight for the African rights and independence.
- It led to the establishment of the most powerful country (South Africa) on the African continent.
- The whites dominated the economy of South Africa especially after taking over African land and minerals.
- Many Africans were killed as they organized massive protest against the whites like at Soweto in 1976 to 1977.

THE APARTHEID POLICY AND THE STRUGGLE FOR FREEDOM IN SOUTH AFRICA (1948-1994)

- Apartheid was an **Afrikaner** or Boer word meaning separateness or apartness of races or people.
- The policy was mainly developed out of the **Boer's racial prejudice** and the belief that they were a superior race.
- It was a policy of discrimination practiced by the Whites over non-whites in South Africa.
- It was started by the Boers since their arrival at the cape in 1647.
- The policy was built over a long period of time and it was the Boer's favourable political policy.
- The policy was designed and forwarded by the Afrikaner University professor and it was supported by the laws.
- It was officially started by Dr. Daniel Malan who was the Prime Minister of South Africa.
- The policy gave the whites an upper hand in the running of South Africa's affairs.
- It involved creation of separate homelands known as **Bantustans** for the natives of South Africa.

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE INTRODUCTION OF APARTHEID IN SOUTH AFRICA IN 1948

- The growth of the Boer or **Afrikaner** nationalism in South Africa led to the establishment of Apartheid in South Africa.
- The teachings of the Dutch Reformed Church that they were God's chosen race led to the establishment of Apartheid in South Africa.
- The strong rise of African nationalism in South Africa after World War II threatened the Boers hence apartheid.

- The low levels of education on the side of the Africans and other non- whites paved way for the establishment of Apartheid.
- The rise of Dr. Daniel Malan to power in 1948 led to the establishment of Apartheid in South Africa.
- The need to suffocate the rights and freedoms of the Indians and the coloureds living in South Africa led to the introduction of the policy.
- The whites wanted to promote White domination and supremacy in South Africa.
- The Whites wanted to weaken African rebellions which were a threat to white domination of South Africa.
- The need to make the whites and non-whites to develop separately was another consideration for the apartheid policy.
- The whites wanted to remove Africans from South African National politics.
- The whites were driven by the desire to deny Africans access to good social facilities e.g. schools, hospitals and entertainment centers.
- It was introduced to create easy and cheap labour of Africans for the whites.
- The whites were influenced by the theory of Darwinism that stated that the superior races should dominate the inferior ones.
- The whites wanted to create the market for the outdated European goods.
- It was part of the divide and rule policy aimed at weakening the Africans.
- The need to deny African ownership of minerals and other economic resources in South Africa led to the apartheid policy.
- The whites were influenced by Italian “**fascism**” and Germany “**Nazism**” that had promoted the domination of the Germans (Aryan race) and the Italians.
- The misinterpretation of the Bible about Noah’s sons that Ham who was cursed represented the Africans and the blessed Shem represented the whites influenced its introduction.
- The rise of Dr. Daniel Malan to power who believed in white supremacy led to its introduction.

Why was there the policy of apartheid in South Africa in 1948?

HOW APARTHEID WAS PRACTICED/APPLIED IN SOUTH AFRICA

How was Apartheid practiced in South Africa between 1948 and 1994?

- Apartheid was applied or practiced through establishing a number of Laws or Acts.
- It was practiced in the fields of Politics, Education, Land, Employment and other Social aspects.

POLITICS

- The Africans were removed from the common voter’s register by the Native Act of 1936.
- The Africans in the Cape Province were to elect three white representatives in the House of Assembly on a separate voter’s register.
- The Africans throughout South Africa were to elect four Europeans to represent them in the Senate.
- The coloured people were also removed from the common voter’s register and were put on a separate one.

- The Africans who tried to resist racial discrimination were arrested and imprisoned like Nelson Mandela, Albert Luthuli and Robert Sobukwe.
- The African political parties like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan-African Congress (PAC) were banned from operation.
- Any publication like Newspapers suspected for supporting the African nationalists was banned.
- Later African representation in the South African parliament was abolished.
- The whites passed an Act that authorized local magistrates to ban any gathering of two or more people for forty eight hours.
- African political organizations were stopped from receiving financial assistance from abroad.
- There was continuous arrest of people without fair trial.
- It was illegal for the Africans to complain and report about the prison conditions and for the prisoners to communicate with anyone.

EDUCATION

- The Bantu Education Act of 1953 and the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959 defined the education to be offered to the Africans.
- By these Acts, the Africans and coloureds had to go to separate schools from those of the whites.
- The Africans were given inferior type of education to keep them in an inferior position in society.
- Academic and professional training like banking was not given to the Africans.
- The Africans were mainly given agricultural lessons to equip them for survival.
- The Africans were given an inferior curriculum and examinations.
- The African education was conducted in local languages or mother languages.
- African languages and sometimes the English Language were also used to prepare them for a simple conversation with the Europeans.
- African education was removed from the missionary control and put under government control.
- The government decided who to be taught, who to teach and what to teach.
- Higher education for Africans was discouraged. They also studied local issues rather than national issues.
- The Africans were put in congested classes and given inferior teachers.
- African education was poorly funded and the teachers were poorly paid.
- There were different universities for the different races following the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959.
- African universities were set up in rural areas like Fort Hare University for the Xhosa, Ugowo University for the Zulu, the Sotho in Turf loop, the coloureds in Belle-Ville and the Indians in West Ville University.
- The white universities were in Natal, Cape Town and Witwatersrand.

EMPLOYMENT

- There was enslavement of the Africans and making them a source of cheap labour.

- Skilled employment was reserved for the Europeans while the heavy and unskilled work for the Africans like chopping of wood, digging in the mines and drawing water.
- The Africans were paid low or no wages for their heavy work done.
- The **Mines and Workers' Act of 1911** denied Africans employment as skilled workers in the mines.
- The Africans were not to belong to any Trade Union. For example, the Industrial **Conciliation Act of 1937** stopped the Africans from forming Trade Unions.
- The workers were excluded from organized consultation with the employers.
- African workers in towns were put in dirty African townships like Sharpeville, Vereeniging and Soweto
- The whites were the supervisors of the Africans at work.

AS REGARDS LAND

- Land was divided into two categories i.e. the Native and non-native land by the Land Act of 1913.
- Only 13% of the land was given to the Africans (Natives) and 87% belonged to the whites.
- Separate homes were created for the Africans. These were known as the Bantustans and they included Transkei, Ciskei, Gazankulu and Kwazulu - Natal.
- The African chiefs were given power over local issues in the Bantustans.
- By 1950, all people in South Africa had to be registered as whites, coloureds and natives.
- Africans were forbidden to live outside their reserves or Bantustans.
- The Africans were only allowed to live away from their reserves when working for the Europeans.

SOCIAL AFFAIRS

- Social laws were passed that segregated Africans in social activities and contacts.
- Marriage between the Africans and whites was not allowed by the **Mixed Marriages Act of 1949**.
- Physical love between whites and non-white men and women was also stopped by the **Immorality Act of 1950**.
- Roads and beaches were marked in administrative way i.e. “whites only” or “non-whites only”
- Africans enjoyed separate social services e.g. hospitals, roads and railways from the whites.

THE USE OF PASS SYSTEM

- All people had to possess an identity card on which their race was written.
- Free movement of Africans was restricted by the pass laws.
- Every African of 15 years and above, whether male or female had to carry a passbook which contained all the permits and registrations like tax receipt and certificate of employment.
- Police officers could demand any of the permits and registrations at all times.

- Africans had to first get permission from their local labour office before seeking for employment in the urban centers.
- The contracted workers in white areas were not supposed to live with their wives and children.
- The Africans who were not employed in the white occupied areas were only allowed to stay for three hours.
- The Africans had to get a permit to enter an urban area if the visit was to last for over 72 hours.
- It was illegal for the Africans to live in the towns of the whites.
- Even the coloureds and Asians who had shops and property in the white occupied areas were prohibited from using them.
- The Africans were not to share social services like health, roads, railways, schools with the whites.

EFFECTS OF THE APARTHEID POLICY ON THE AFRICANS

- Africans were denied independence by the whites.
- It led to violent protests by the Africans which led to the death of many people. For example, in 1960 at Sharpeville sixty two (62) died and over 220 died during Clement Kadali's strikes.
- Africans were lowered to a status of being second class citizens in South Africa.
- It led to the displacement of Africans from their fertile land into Bantustans.
- It led to the creation of Bantustans e.g. Transkei, Venda, Lebowa and Kwazulu which became special homelands for Africans.
- It also led to establishment of slums for Africans e.g. Sharpeville, Soweto and Langa.
- Africans were denied economic opportunities e.g. jobs in the civil service and ownership of mining area.
- It resulted into restriction of African movement as they had to carry pass books.
- It resulted into African protests and rebellions against apartheid e.g. Sharpeville demonstration of 1960 and Soweto uprising of 1976-1977.
- Africans lost their lives during the uprisings against the whites.
- Apartheid policy led to increased exploitation of African resources e.g. minerals and fertile soils.
- It led to imprisonment of African leaders like Nelson Mandela and Robert Sobukwe for opposing apartheid.
- It resulted into the formation of political parties by Africans e.g. **African National Congress (ANC) in 1912** and **Pan-African congress in 1959** to oppose apartheid.
- It increased the level of illiteracy among the Africans since they were given poor schools and teachers.
- It led to formation of trade unions to oppose the economic exploitation of the whites.
- Africans were denied political participation in South African politics.
- Africans became the suppliers of cheap labour to the whites.
- It created hatred and enmity between the whites and Africans.
- Africans became poor and poorer due to apartheid.

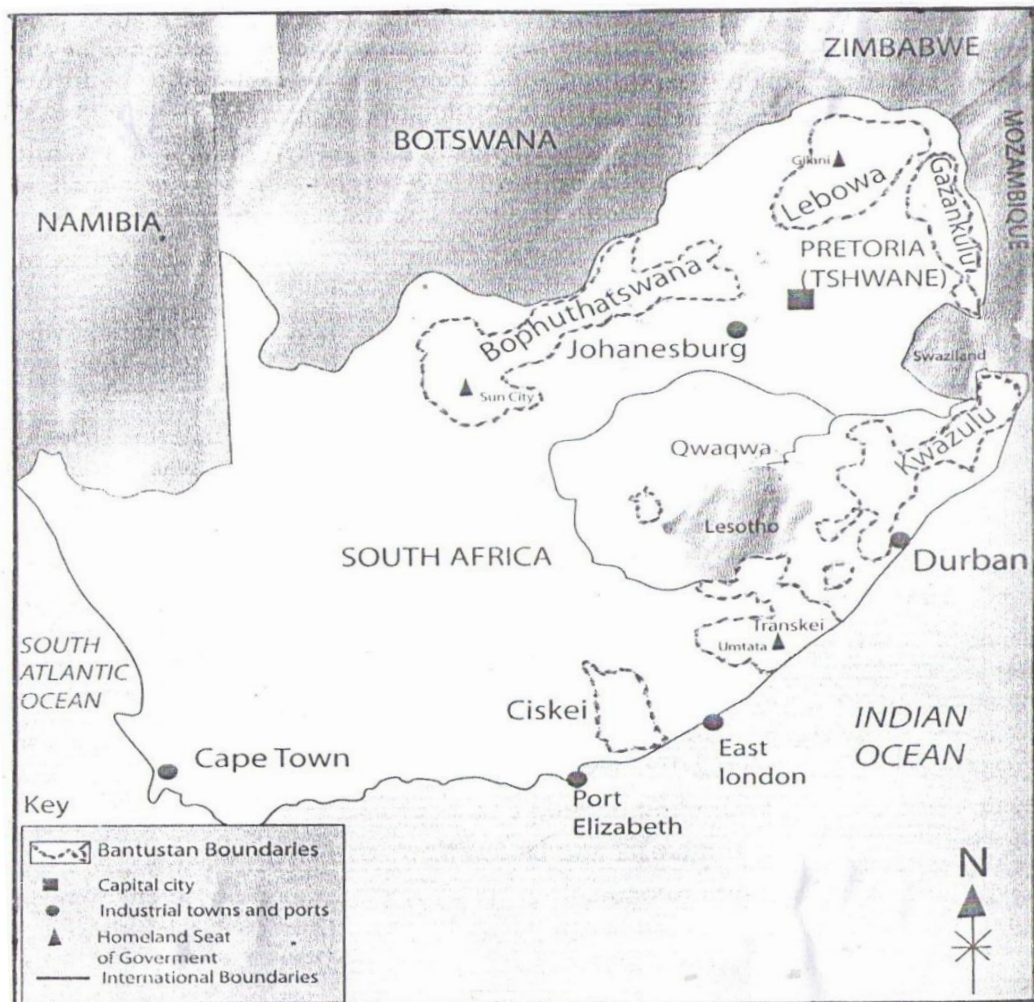
ON THE WHITES

- The whites took most of South African land and became rich.
- The whites enjoyed the status of being first class citizens of South Africa.
- Apartheid made the whites to dominate the politics of South Africa.
- It led to the white man's domination of office jobs in South Africa.
- The whites became highly educated because they got a better quality of education.
- The whites took over control of the economic resources of South Africa e.g. minerals and fertile land.
- It led to loss of lives due to attacks by Africans who opposed the policy of apartheid.
- It contributed to the rise of Boer nationalism since it promoted them as a superior race.
- It made the whites to enjoy the better urban life due to their stay in towns.

THE BANTUSTANS POLICY IN SOUTH AFRICA

- Bantustans were isolated homelands for the blacks in South Africa created by the whites during the period of apartheid.
- They were semi-independent political units set up for Africans in which they were to be under African leaders.
- They were introduced by Dr. Verwoerd in January 1959.
- Over 10 Bantustans were created and they were Tanskei, Ciskei, Kwazulu, Gazankulu, Venda, Lebowa, Basotwoqwoquo, Boputha, Ndebele among others.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE BANTUSTAN AREAS DURING THE APARTHEID ERA



REASONS FOR THE FORMATION OF THE BANTUSTANS

Why were the Bantustans created?

- They were created to separate the white race from the non-white races in South Africa.
- They were created to promote separate development of Africans and the whites since the two would be staying separately.
- They were to ensure that the whites enslave Africans in South Africa.
- The whites wanted to isolate Africans such that they benefit alone in the control of South Africa.
- The whites wanted to create labour reservoirs where to draw cheap African labour for their plantations and mines.
- They were created to weaken African nationalism so that Africans do not raise against white rule.

- They wanted to ensure that only the whites own fertile land and mineral resources in South Africa.
- The whites wanted to avoid competition for jobs with Africans in South Africa.
- They were created to isolate Africans from the main stream of South African politics since they would be ruling themselves in the Bantustans.
- They wanted to deny Africans voting rights in South Africa by isolating them from white controlled areas.
- The whites wanted to ensure social segregation of the non- whites by giving them inferior education in the Bantustans.
- The whites wanted these homes to act as a dumping ground for out-dated items and unproductive labour from the white areas.
- The policy was to disarm Africans completely so that political control remains in the hands of the whites.
- It was to blind fold/deceive the white world that apartheid was good and Africans were ruling themselves.
- It was also to divide social services for Africans to get poor while the whites would get better quality social services.
- It was to preserve the racial purity of the whites since they would mix freely with the Africans.

EFFECTS OF THE BANTUSTANS

What were the consequences of the creation of Bantustans on Africans?

What effects did the Bantustans have on the Africans and Whites?

- Africans were enslaved and continued to be sole states until 1994.
- The Bantustans led to weakening of Africans militarily and could not easily fight the whites.
- They created disunity as Africans killed each other.
- They reduced African political power since it was limited in the Bantustans.
- Africans lost their land to the whites especially those who stayed in fertile soils.
- Africans suffered from bad conditions in their homelands hence leading to low standards of living.
- Africans were discriminated against social, political and economic affairs in South Africa.
- The Bantustans increased racial segregation of the whites against Africans.
- Many Africans were killed during the resistance towards the policy of Bantustans.
- Africans were arrested, tortured and imprisoned as a result of the policy.
- It led to loss of African independence due to denial of political rights in South Africa.
- The policy of Bantustans led to disarmament of Africans to reduce African resistance.
- The policy laid foundations for uprisings in South Africa like Sharpeville massacre in 1960 and Soweto uprising in 1976.
- It led to over population in the Bantustans hence increasing pressure on land.
- The policy led to the rise of African urbanization/Black towns e.g. Soweto.
- It led to formation of political parties e.g. African National Congress, Pan African Congress.
- It contributed to the rise of African nationalism.

- It led to decline in agriculture due to loss of productive labour hence decline in food supply.
- It contributed to unemployment on the side of Africans.

THE REACTION/RESPONSE TOWARDS THE APARTHEID POLICY

How did the Africans respond to Apartheid?

- When Apartheid was introduced in 1948, it generated response both within South Africa and abroad.
Internally,
- Africans did not welcome apartheid when it was introduced and they opposed it.
- The majority of Africans reacted negatively against apartheid.
- The response of the Africans towards Apartheid was in different forms, at first they used peaceful and later non-violent means to oppose it as noted below;
- The Blacks formed mass political parties like the **African National Congress** in 1912 and **Pan-African Congress (PAC)** formed in 1959 by **Robert Sobukwe** to fight the practice.
- There was industrial action in form of strikes by the Blacks aimed at weakening the economy of the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- The Africans organized demonstrations to capture international attention. For example, there was the **Sharpeville demonstration** of 1960 as well as the **Soweto demonstration** of 1976.
- They formed surbotage groups like Umkontho Wesiziwe (spear of nation) and Poqo to attack government places like beaches, parks etc. to express their dislike to the regime.
- Newspapers and magazines were written by Africans to oppose Apartheid e.g. **“Mine Boy”** by Peter Abrahams, **“No Easy walk to Freedom”** by Nelson Mandela.
- The South African artistes also composed anti-Apartheid albums which mobilized the masses. For example, Lucky Dube, Chaka-Chaka and Brenda Fassie.
- They co-operated with non-whites like the Indians and the coloureds to oppose Apartheid.
- They mobilized funds from Donors to facilitate their anti-Apartheid struggle.
- Africans provoked police to arrest them so as to win International sympathy like in the Sharpeville demonstrations of 1960.
- The African National Congress (ANC) declared a day of National mourning to remember the Sharpeville massacres of 1960 and the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The African students formed organizations to oppose Apartheid e.g. The National Union of South African Students (NUSAS) and the Black Consciousness movement (BCM).
- African youth formed organizations to oppose Apartheid e.g. The South African Youth Congress.
- The African workers formed secret organizations to oppose mistreatment like the Congress of South African Union.
- They looked for assistance from some fellow African states like Egypt, Libya, Tanzania and Uganda. They even opened up training grounds in the above countries.

- Africans boycotted the consumption of European goods to paralyse the White man's economy in South Africa.
- African women formed organizations e.g. Federation of African Women in 1954 and the Federation of Transvaal Women of 1960 to oppose Apartheid.
- Some responded by demanding for the release of the political prisoners like Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu and Robert Sobukwe.
- The South African nationalists co-operated with the communist countries like China and USSR. This helped them to get military support from the above countries.
- The Anglican Church also rose up against the Apartheid government e.g. **Bishop Desmond Tutu** was against this policy in the 1980s.

Externally,

- The UNO intervened and opposed to racial segregation in South Africa.
- The OAU also intervened in the struggle against Apartheid in South Africa. In 1974, it formed the South African Liberation Committee with its Headquarters in Dar-Es-Salaam.
- The Southern African countries formed the **Southern African Development Co-ordination Council (SADCC)** in 1979 to weaken Apartheid.
- The Blacks in USA under the spirit of Pan-Africanism put pressure on the President Jimmy Carter to stop the American multi-companies from investing in South Africa.
- The Communist countries like USSR and China provided moral, financial and military assistance to the Africans in order to stop the capitalist advance into South Africa.
- Some African countries provided sanctuaries and embassies to the South African nationalists e.g. Egypt, Libya, Uganda, Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Angola and Tanzania among others.
- These countries also provided financial and military support and they included Egypt, Libya, Uganda, Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Angola and Tanzania among others.
- The International Olympic Committee also banned South Africa from participating in all the Olympic Games in order to isolate her through sports.

APARTHEID WARS OR UPRISINGS IN SOUTH AFRICA

THE SHARPEVILLE MASSACRE OR DEMONSTRATION OF 1960

- This demonstration is also popularly known as the anti-pass protest of 1960 or the Sharpeville incident or uprising of 1960.
- It took place on **Monday 21st March 1960** in the black township of Sharpeville near Vereeniging city in Transvaal.
- It occurred during the Apartheid regime led by **Dr.Verwoerd** who was the Prime Minister.
- The protest was led by **Robert Sobukwe**, the leader of the Pan African Congress (PAC), a political party that he had formed in **1959**.
- However, both the members of the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC) were involved in this demonstration.

- It started when the demonstrators moved towards the police station of Sharpeville, a black township near Johannesburg in Transvaal and offered themselves for arrest.
- The demonstrators were protesting the establishment of the Pass Laws which restricted the movement of the non-whites.
- The Sharpeville police led by **Lt. Colonel Piennar** and **Major Van Zyl** panicked and ordered the shooting. This is when some protestors stoned Piennar's car and as a result, over sixty (60) innocent people died.

CAUSES OF THE 1960 SHARPEVILLE MASSACRE

What were the causes of the Sharpeville massacre of 1960?

- The immediate cause was the introduction of the Pass Laws that required all the Africans to carry pass books containing their personal details e.g. name, tax code and employer details.
- The passes also kept the Africans in the poor Bantustans which also annoyed them leading to the demonstration.
- The pass laws also made the Africans second class citizens in their own country which forced them to stage a demonstration.
- The poor housing conditions in Sharpeville town caused the protest e.g. several African families would be made to stay in a two roomed house meant for one family.
- The high cost of living in Sharpeville town caused the protest i.e. there was an increase of the house rent in Sharpeville with no corresponding increase in wages.
- The need for independence by the Africans from the Apartheid made them to stage a protest in Sharpeville in 1960.
- The unfair education laws like the Bantu Education Act of 1953 as well as the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959 which denied good education to the Africans annoyed them, hence forcing them to stage a protest.
- The unfair labour laws which encouraged the enslavement of the Africans through forced labour also caused the Sharpeville protest of 1960.
- The lack of good social services like schools, hospitals and recreation centres by the Africans in Sharpeville town also caused the protest.
- The need to react against the mistreatment and detention (imprisonment) of the Africans without trial by the Apartheid regime caused the demonstration.
- The grabbing of the African land by the whites in South Africa also made the Africans to organize the protest in 1960.
- The role of the South African nationalists caused the protest e.g. Robert Sobukwe mobilized and sensitized the Africans in Sharpeville town to rise up against the Apartheid regime.
- The need to publicize the bad leadership of the Apartheid regime to the international community (outside world) made the Africans to stage the Sharpeville demonstration of 1960.
- The successful protest of the **women** of the Orange Free State in 1920 against the injustices of the whites against the Africans inspired the Sharpeville uprising.
- The rampant killing of the Africans by the Apartheid regime also made the Africans to stage the Sharpeville protest of 1960.

- It was also caused by the **1952 Defiance Campaign** which called up on the Africans to go against the Apartheid policies in South Africa through trade boycotts, demonstrations and other forms of non-cooperation with the Apartheid regime.
- The rise of violence among the South African youths after the failure of peace in delivering change inspired them to stage the pass protest of 1960.

EFFECTS OF THE 1960 SHARPEVILLE MASSACRE

How did the Sharpeville massacre affect the people of South Africa?

- It resulted into throwing of stones at the policemen of which one hit Piennar's which caused the police to panic and shot at the protestors.
- It led to the death of the Africans e.g. sixty nine (69) people were registered dead in Sharpeville town.
- Over 180 Africans were wounded and injured during the Sharpeville protest.
- The demonstrators were defeated and dispersed by the police.
- The ring leaders of the protest were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Robert Sobukwe was sentenced to three years in prison.
- A state of emergency was declared in South Africa. The Apartheid regime limited the political activities of the Africans like demonstrations as well as political rallies.
- The African political parties like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC) were banned for staging the Anti-pass protest.
- It led to rise of militarism among Africans to fight for their freedom e.g. ANC formed **Umkhonto Wesizwe** while PAC formed **POQO** which carried out bombing government facilities like banks, bridges and beaches.
- It exposed the brutality of the Apartheid regime and this helped the Africans to attract international sympathy towards their liberation struggle.
- The United Nations Organization (UNO) condemned the massacre and even declared **21st March** every year as an international day to eliminate racial discrimination in the world.
- It increased the African opposition against the whites i.e. the Africans increased their **Defiance Campaign** against the whites in South Africa.
- It increased the mistreatment of the Africans by the whites. This therefore increased their misery and suffering.
- It eliminated differences between ANC and PAC which created unity and togetherness so as to defeat the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- It inspired the outbreak of other uprisings staged towards the Apartheid regime e.g. the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- It forced some African nationalists into exile to avoid being arrested and imprisoned by the Apartheid regime.
- It increased the hatred between the whites and Africans in South Africa.
- It led to the passing of the second **General Law Amendment Act of 1st May 1960** which gave power to the authorities to continue detaining persons after serving their sentences.
- The passes were suspended or abolished for some time by the Apartheid regime but later restored.

- It increased the brutality of the white regime towards the Africans and many of them were killed.
- It increased poverty among the Africans as many of them refused to go and work for the whites.
- The protest forced some investors especially from Britain to withdraw their money and businesses from South Africa. This weakened the Apartheid regime economically.
- Many protestors tore and burnt their pass books during the protest.
- A lot of property like houses and government facilities in Sharpeville town were destroyed during the demonstration.

THE SOWETO UPRISINGS OF 1976

What led to the Soweto uprising in 1976?

- The Soweto uprising was against the apartheid government led by Prime Minister **John Vorster**.
- It occurred on **16th/June/1976** in the dirty African town of Soweto.
- The uprising was started mainly by African students led by the 19 year old boy **Mashinini**. He was later joined by the coloureds, industrial workers and other people.
- The demonstration was a reaction against the introduction of **Afrikaans** by the Apartheid regime as a medium of instruction in the Black schools.
- They started when pupils of **Orlando West Junior Secondary School** started rioting or demonstrating.
- The demonstrations soon spread to other towns like the Cape Town, East London and Port Elizabeth.
- They went on up to September 1976.

CAUSES OF THE SOWETO UPRISING OF 1976

Explain the causes of the Soweto uprising of 1976.

- The immediate cause was the introduction of the **Afrikaans language** as a medium of instruction in African schools in 1974.
- The students also opposed the Bantu Education Act of 1953 as well as the Universities Extension Act of 1959 which had the following injustices;
- The Bantu Education Act of 1953 emphasized that equality will not be extended to the African students.
- It also emphasized imparting of the lowest technical and academic skills on to the Africans. This annoyed the Africans because it would deny the Africans better jobs.
- The missionaries were also expelled from the African education which denied the Africans chance to get educated.
- The law left the whites with the power to decide and control the direction of African education i.e. the whites who hated the Africans were to decide who to study, select the teachers and even the content to be taught. This annoyed the Africans.

- It also emphasized the use of Bantu or local languages not English. This annoyed the Africans because it would keep them backward forever.
- The above also increased the divisions among the Africans which further annoyed them.
- It also reduced funding for African education which annoyed the Africans e.g. while the whites spent one hundred pounds on each white student, only six and half pounds were spent on an African student.
- Even the classes were very congested with a very poor student-teacher ratio of 72:1 by 1968.
- The 1959 Universities Act, which created separate black universities with poor facilities, annoyed the Africans.
- Such education acts were making the Africans second class citizens in their own country, hence forcing them to organize the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The poor conditions of living in Soweto town gave rise to gangs of tough children and adults who could not fear death e.g. Most of the houses had no electricity and running water.
- The students and other Africans were annoyed by other inhuman apartheid policies e.g. forcing them to use passes or pass books.
- The enslavement of Africans by the whites annoyed the Africans leading to the uprising.
- The harsh government reaction to the initial demonstrations like the one at Sharpeville in 1960 made the Africans more violent, hence causing the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The role of the **Black Conscious Movement** (BCM) and its leader **Steve Biko** who mobilized Africans to rise up caused the Soweto demonstration of 1976.
- The visit of **Henry Kissinger**, the American Secretary of State to South Africa in September 1976 caused more riots since the Americans had done nothing to help the Africans against the whites.
- Unemployment in Soweto Township among the Africans forced them to rise up in 1976.
- The influence of Bishop Desmond Tutu caused the demonstration i.e. he condemned the 1974 Education and Language laws which introduced Afrikaans in African schools thus encouraging Africans to rise up.
- The oratory (good speaking skills) of the 19 year old **Mashinini**, the leader of the demonstration encouraged the African students to rise up in Soweto in 1976.
- The independence of Angola and Mozambique from Portuguese colonial rule in 1975 encouraged the Africans students in Soweto to rise up against the white injustices in South Africa in 1976.

EFFECTS OF THE SOWETO UPRISINGS OF 1976

What were the consequences of the Soweto uprising in 1976?

- The urban councils which were restricting African rights were replaced by the community councils which gave the Africans more powers in managing their affairs.
- The responsibility of controlling the black schools was shifted to the community councils, not the whites.

- Annual anniversaries to remember the dead were to be conducted **every 16th/July of the year**. Up to the present today, 16th July is remembered all over Africa as the day of the African Child.
- Apartheid based schools were attacked and destroyed by the Africans.
- Black trade unions were formed by the African workers in Eastern Cape.
- It led to massive loss of lives i.e. about 200 people were killed, including Hector Patterson who was only 13 years at the time of his killing.
- Over one thousand people were injured during the demonstration.
- Over 500 students demonstrated against the visit of USA Secretary of State Henry Kissinger to South Africa in September 1976.
- It led to the staging of a sit down strike by Africans to remember the dead.
- It led to the declaration of a state of emergency by the Minister of Defence in 1977, for three months.
- It led to the banning of 13 anti-apartheid groups and two black newspapers by the government in October 1977 accused of inciting the students into demonstrations. These were **“The World”** and **“The Weekend World”**.
- It led to the arrest and subsequent murder of Steve Biko and his Black Conscious Movement (BCM) was also banned.
- It made some whites to start supporting the Africans e.g. over 300 white students from the Witwatersrand University demonstrated against the police brutality in Soweto.
- It made the OAU to strongly condemn the Apartheid regime and also increased its support against it.
- It also made the Frontline states to increase their fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It also made the UNO to condemn the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- The demand to overthrow Apartheid policy became widespread and slogans like **“down with Vorster”**, **“Let Vorster study Zulu”** were heard more often.
- It led to the adoption of violence after the failure of peaceful protests in the struggle against Apartheid e.g. many youths were smuggled out of South Africa for military training abroad.
- Riots spread all over the country for example in Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, etc.
- Films to popularize the African suffering were acted to honour the dead e.g. **“Sarafina”**.

PROBLEMS/OBSTACLES TO THE LIBERATION STRUGGLE IN SOUTH AFRICA

What problems did the Nationalists face in the struggle against Apartheid in South Africa?

- The struggle against the Apartheid policy ended in 1994 with the attainment of freedom in South Africa.
- The struggle took long to be completed because the Africans faced a number of obstacles.

- The problems to South Africa's liberation struggle worsened with the establishment of the **1910 Act of Union** and went on up to **1994** when South Africa achieved independence.
- The poor education system given to the Africans was an obstacle i.e. low quality education and taught in their local languages.
- The banning of African political parties by the Apartheid regime was a major obstacle. For example, in 1960 the ANC and PAC were banned.
- The Nationalists were militarily weak to fight and over throw the Apartheid regime.
- African struggle was weakened by the arrest, exiling and imprisonment of their leaders like Nelson Mandela and Robert Sobukwe.
- The disunity and fighting within the anti-Apartheid groups delayed the struggle. The Africans were divided along tribal and ideological lines.
- The assassination of the anti-Apartheid leaders like Steve Biko in prison in 1977 as well as Chris Hani was another factor.
- The "divide and rule policy" that was introduced in South Africa by the whites also left the African communities divided.
- The role of **Chief Buthelezi**, the leader of the **Inkatha Freedom Movement** promoted tribal nationalism of the Zulu. This delayed the liberation on the entire South Africa.
- The Apartheid government had a strong spy network that enabled it to gather information about the operation of the Africans.
- The support from USA and Canada to the Apartheid government also worked against African efforts towards independence. For example, they supported the Apartheid government in terms of arms and finance or money.
- The establishment of strict Apartheid Laws or Acts delayed the struggle for freedom i.e. the laws were very oppressive.
- The establishment of a strong aggressive police known as the **South African Police** was a major obstacle. For example, it used tear gas and guns to disperse the demonstrators.
- The establishment of the Bantustans i.e. separate homes for Africans delayed the struggle
- The delayed Independence of South Africa's neighbouring countries led to the survival of the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- The Cold War politics on the African continent delayed South Africa's struggle for freedom as they mad Britain and USA to support the whites.
- The weakness of the United Nations Organization (UNO) delayed South Africa's struggle for freedom.
- The existence of the conservative white leaders in South Africa who strongly believed in racism like Daniel Malan, John Vorster, Louis Botha and Dr. Verwoerd delayed the liberation struggle.
- The military strength of the Apartheid regime also worked against the struggle.
- The use of non – violent methods in the initial stages of the struggle was a major factor.
- The rampant poverty and economic backwardness of the Africans led to the survival of the Apartheid regime in South Africa.

- Africans also lacked good leadership since most leaders had been imprisoned and others were not trained in warfare.
- The weakness of the Organization of African Unity (OAU) delayed the struggle for freedom in South Africa. For example, it was militarily weak.
- The collaboration of some African countries with the Apartheid regime delayed the struggle. For example Lesotho, Swaziland and Malawi.

FACTORS THAT FACILITATED THE STRUGGLE FOR FREEDOM IN SOUTH AFRICA

Explain the factors that were responsible for the liberation of South Africa by 1994.

- The adoption of the military approach led to the defeat of the Apartheid regime.
- The harsh Apartheid laws made the Africans more determined to liberate themselves.
- The Independence of the neighbouring countries like Angola and Mozambique in 1975, Zimbabwe in 1980 and Namibia in 1990 inspired the nationalists in South Africa to fight hard for their Independence.
- UNO encouraged its member countries to stop relating with South Africa.
- The collapse of the Triamvirate was another factor that led to the struggle for freedom in South Africa.
- The role of the mass media. The newspapers as well as television stations and radios were used to expose the evils of the Apartheid regime which eventually weakened the government.
- The role of Robert Sobukwe also led to the liberation of South Africa. For example, he formed a political party known as the Pan-African Congress in 1959.
- The contribution of Nelson Mandela led the formation of the African National Congress (ANC) which struggled for freedom in South Africa.
- The support from the communist countries like China and USSR led to the defeat of the Apartheid regime.
- The role of the African liberation movements and their military wings like PAC with **POQO** led to the liberation struggle.
- The end of Cold War politics in 1991 favoured the struggle for Independence in South Africa.
- The rise of Fredrick De Clerk as the **Umkhonto Wesizwe** President of the South African Apartheid regime in 1989 was vital in the struggle for freedom in South Africa.
- The role of the frontline states like Angola, Mozambique, Zambia and Tanzania was vital. For example, they offered military bases to the South African fighters.
- The Common Wealth Countries led to the liberation of South Africa. For example, South Africa was banned from being a member of the Common Wealth Organization due to its Apartheid policy.
- The role of the Anglican Church under Archbishop Desmond Tutu led to the end of Apartheid as he preached exposing its dangers.
- The role of the white liberals in South Africa led to the defeat of the Apartheid regime.
- The role of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) led to the defeat of Apartheid.

THE AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (ANC)

- This was the largest and well known political organization in South Africa.
- It was formed in **1912** as the **South African Native Congress**.
- Later in **1935**, it was renamed the **African National Congress (ANC)**. The first president of the ANC was **Doctor Xuma** who was elected in 1940.

AIMS OF THE AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (ANC)

- It was formed to promote mutual understanding among the different races of people in South Africa namely, Africans, the coloureds and the whites.
- It was formed to defend the rights of all the south Africans whose rights as human beings had been violated e.g. the right to live, associate and to determine their political destiny.
- It was formed to provide a collective mouth piece to the Africans to air out their complaints both at national and international levels.
- It was formed to fight for the independence of the black people in South Africa.
- It was formed to fight for the economic equality of all races in South Africa. The whites restrict the blacks and coloureds to the position of a permanently low paid working which caused poverty.
- It was formed to destroy white domination in the politics of South Africa by involving the blacks in the politics of their country.
- It was formed to destroy the Apartheid policy in South Africa and put in place a democratic government that would represent the political views of all the races.
- The Apartheid policy had made the Africans second class citizens in their own country.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE ANC

- The ANC lacked enough funds since the majority of the Africans were very poor.
- Some African countries like Malawi and Zaire refused to support the ANC and instead they supported the Apartheid regime.
- They faced a problem of arrest and imprisonment of their leaders like Nelson Mandela, Albert Lithuli and Robert Sobukwe.
- Many Africans were killed while rebelling against the Apartheid government e.g. in the famous the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960 and the Soweto Massacre of 1976.
- Some leaders were forced into exile e.g. Oliver Thambo was exiled to Zambia.
- The ANC lacked strong leaders especially before 1945 who could organize the party better.
- They lacked grass root support before 1945 because majority of the Africans feared the reaction of the whites in case they joined the ANC.
- Some leaders promoted tribal conflicts among the ANC members especially among the Zulu.
- There was disunity within the ANC leadership for example the youth against the old, those who favoured peace against violence. This weakened the party.

- It suffered from problems of backwardness and illiteracy among the Africans.
- Some big powers like USA and Canada supported the whites in South Africa against the Africans.
- The Africans were subjected to many restrictions which made it difficult for the ANC to carry out its planned activities.
- The ANC lacked effective military support to fight against the white regime.

THE ROLE OF THE AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (ANC) IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

What contribution did the African National Congress make towards the liberation struggle in South Africa?

- It played a major role in the struggle against Apartheid up to 1994 when the policy collapsed as shown below;
- It decampaigned the Apartheid laws which denied freedom to the Africans. For example, it denounced the law about pass books.
- It adopted the non-violent approach towards Apartheid i.e. it used constitutional means to demand for an end to Apartheid.
- The membership of the ANC which represented the interests of different groups in South Africa was also an advantage against Apartheid.
- The ANC secured military and financial support from international organizations like the OAU and UNO which finally led to the collapse of Apartheid.
- ANC adopted violence after the failure of peaceful means e.g. it formed a military wing known as the **Umkhonto Wesizwe** or the **“Spear of the Nation.”**
- It organized scholarships for the youths to study from abroad in countries like Libya, Tanzania, Uganda and Mozambique.
- It also went ahead to establish schools for the African students who had been expelled from the white schools
- In 1955, the ANC issued the Freedom Charter which called for the total freedom of all races which inspired the masses to rise up against the Apartheid regime.
- It mobilized and sensitized the masses in South Africa about the need for independence thus leading to the liberation struggle.
- The activities of ANC led to the arrest and imprisonment of its members like chief Albert Lithuli and Nelson Mandela etc. leading to the regime’s collapse.
- The ANC groomed potential leaders of the liberation struggle like Walter Sisulu and Nelson Mandela who spear headed the liberation struggle in South Africa.
- The ANC also participated in the multi-racial elections organized in April 1994 in which it scored a land slide victory.

THE ORGANISATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU)

- The Organization of African Unity (OAU) was formed in 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- By this time, Africans were divided along traditional lines, religions and political groups like Casablanca and Monrovia.

- Casablanca had Ghana, Guinea, Mali, Morocco and Egypt.
- Monrovia consisted of Liberia, Ivory Coast, Cameroon, Senegal, Togo, Dahomey, Nigeria, Upper Volta, DRC, Central African Republic, Ethiopia and Liberia.
- It was formed on the advice of Emperor Heille Sellasie of Ethiopia.

Some of the objectives/aims for its formation include the following;

- It was formed to promote the solidarity and unity of all African states.
- To defend the independence of all African states.
- To eradicate all forms of colonialism or neo-colonialism from the continent.
- To defend the territorial integrity of all African states.
- To promote international co-operation in respect of requirements of the United Nations Charter.
- To promote the respect of human rights all over the continent.
- To spear head economic development all over the continent as a check against neo-colonialism.
- To fight against the policy of apartheid that had sprung the African continent.
- To demand for the release of political prisoners like Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu etc.

THE ROLE PLAYED BY OAU IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

What was the role of OAU in the liberation of South Africa?

- It played a major role in the liberation of South Africa as noted below;
- It recognized political parties in South Africa like ANC and PAC which gave the Africans morale to fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It put pressure on the European countries like France and Britain to stop supporting the racist government.
- It established a Liberation Committee in 1974 based in Dar-es-salaam, Tanzania which looked for military and financial assistance to the Blacks.
- It formed the **Frontline states** that were very instrumental in the liberation of South Africa.
- It imposed economic sanctions of the South African government which weakened her economic stand by 1994. Its member states gave asylum to the South Africans who were persecuted by the Apartheid regime e.g. **Oliver Tambo** was hosted by Zambia while many others were hosted in Uganda, Libya and Egypt etc.
- OAU member states trained the South African rebels who later launched attacks against the Apartheid regime.
- OAU member states gave scholarships to the South Africans who had been expelled from the White man's schools by the Apartheid regime.
- OAU put pressure on the South African government to change the harsh Apartheid laws.
- It demanded for the release of the political prisoners like Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Thambo among others.
- It co-operated with the United Nations Organization in the struggle against Apartheid by appealing for moral and material support.

- The OAU member states contributed money to support the struggle for independence in South Africa.
- It isolated all countries that dealt with South Africa especially in Africa like Malawi under Kamuzu Banda.
- The OAU member states that were formerly under Britain put pressure on the Common Wealth to expel South Africa from this organization.
- It condemned the abuse of human rights in South Africa by the Apartheid regime.
- OAU prohibited the movement of their citizens into South Africa by issuing pass ports with the words “**All countries except south africa.**”
- It put pressure on President De’clerk to end Apartheid which he finally accepted in 1994, thus leading to the liberation of South Africa.

THE ROLE OF THE FRONTLINE STATES IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

What contribution did the Frontline states make towards the liberation struggle in South Africa?

- The Frontline states were independent African states which have a geographical proximity with South Africa.
- They included Tanzania, Angola, Mozambique, Botswana, Zambia and Zimbabwe.
- These states played a big role as noted below;
- They provided asylum to political refugees from South Africa. For example **Oliver Thambo** was hosted in Zambia.
- They offered education facilities to the young South Africans who had fled in their country due to the harsh Apartheid laws.
- They imposed a **trade embargo** on South Africa which weakened the economic stand of the Apartheid regime, hence leading to its collapse in 1994.
- They offered training bases to the South African liberation movements like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC).
- They put excessive pressure on De’Clerk’s government to introduce political reforms in South Africa.
- They formed the **South African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC)** in 1979 which weakened the economic stand of South Africa.
- They sought and welcomed the support and co-operation of other nationalists and world bodies like the United Nations Organization (UNO).
- The independence of the Front line states like Tanganyika in 1961 Zambia in 1964 etc. inspired South African nationalists to struggle for theirs.
- They helped to exchange intelligence information with the South African freedom fighters leading to the liberation of South Africa.

THE ROLE OF THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANISATION (UNO) IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA

What contribution did the United Nations Organisation states make towards the liberation struggle in South Africa?

- The United Nations Organization (UNO) was formed in **October 1945** after World War II at San Francisco, USA.
- It replaced the defunct League of Nations that had failed to keep world peace. It had its headquarters in New York.
- As a peace loving in the world, the UNO was anti-Apartheid in South Africa.
- Therefore it played a major role in the liberation of South Africa as noted below;
- It provided a platform to the Africans both in South Africa and beyond to condemn the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- It ended diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1961 due its unfair Apartheid laws.
- It set up a special committee against Apartheid in 1962 which looked for international support which helped to liberate South Africa.
- It influenced the expulsion of South Africa from all international sporting activities like the Word Cup as well as the Olympic Games.
- It adopted the international Convention or Treaty on eliminating all forms of racial discrimination in 1965.
- In 1970, South Africa was excluded from the UNO General Assembly.
- It set up a Trust Fund for South Africa's publicity to fight Apartheid.
- It recognized the two liberation movements in South Africa i.e. the ANC and PAC. This gave Africans morale to fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It condemned the indiscriminate killings of innocent civilians during the Soweto demonstration of 1976.
- It approved and financed conferences that were organized to lay strategies for the liberation of South Africa. For example it financed the 1967 conference in Zambia.
- It demanded for the release of political prisoners. Nelson Mandela was released in 1990 which greatly contributed to the liberation of South Africa.
- It collaborated with the Organization of African Unity (OAU) in the struggle against Apartheid. For example, they offered financial assistance to the freedom fighters.
- It imposed economic sanctions on South Africa in 1962 that weakened the economic stand of the Apartheid regime.
- It imposed an **arms embargo** on South Africa and called upon its member countries not to sell arms to the Apartheid regime.
- The UNO mediated talks between the Apartheid government and the armed groups like ANC which finally led to the collapsed of the Apartheid.
- It sent observer teams to monitor elections for majority rule in 1994. As a result, the blacks became victorious under Nelson Mandela.
- This finally marked the end of Apartheid rule in South Africa.

ROLE OF PERSONALITIES IN THE LIBERATION STRUGGLE OF SOUTH AFRICA

NELSON MANDELA

What was the contribution of Nelson Mandela in the struggle for the liberation of South Africa?

- Nelson Mandela was born in **Umata** in Transkei on **18th July 1918**.

- His father **Mgadla Mandela** was the principal councilor to the paramount chief of the **Thembu tribe** known as **David Dalindyebo**.
- The many cases that came before the chief's court influenced him to become a lawyer.
- He received his primary education at a local mission school.
- His secondary education was at a Wesleyan mission school in **Herold** town.
- He later joined Fort Hare University College for a Bachelor of Arts Degree.
- While there, he was a member of the students' representative council.
- When he participated in a students' protest, he was suspended.
- He went to Johannesburg where he completed his Bachelor of Arts Degree by correspondence. In Johannesburg, he started studying for his Bachelor of Laws Degree.
- In 1942, he entered politics by joining the African National Congress (ANC).
- At the peak of World War II, Mandela and a small group of youths in ANC met under the leadership of Lembedde.
- The other members included William Nkomo, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Tambo.
- They started with sixty (60) members while residing in the Rand.
- The aim of these 60 youths was to turn ANC into a mass political party with support from the peasants, workers and the uneducated of both the rural and urban areas.
- Mandela and these youths emphasized radical nationalism and thus formed the African National Congress Youth League (ANCYL).
- Mandela's hard work led to his election as Secretary General of the Youth League in 1947.
- He was behind the programme of action passed in the 1949 Annual Conference of the ANC which emphasized boycott, strike, civil disobedience and non-cooperation. This was after the victory of the Boer Nationalist Party under Dr. Malan in 1948.
- In 1950, he joined the National Executive Committee of ANC.
- He played an important role in issuing a policy document demanding for equal land distribution, trade union rights, education and culture.
- In 1952, he was elected national volunteer in chief of the ANC Defiance Campaigns against the unfair Apartheid laws. He therefore travelled all over the country organizing resistance to the discriminatory laws.
- As a result of the defiance campaigns, he was charged and convicted of breaking the Suppression of Communism Act and given a suspended prison sentence.
- After the defiance campaigns, he was banned from attending any gathering and confined to Johannesburg for six months.
- It was during this confinement that he concentrated on his law profession and was fully admitted to the profession.
- Earlier the ANC had honored him by electing him to the presidency of both the very influential ANCYL and the Transvaal region of ANC at the end of 1952.
- The above honor enabled him to become the Deputy President of ANC.
- While in his law practice, he helped many people with land problems and those breaking the various Apartheid laws.
- Due to the legal assistance he extended to the poor and helpless Africans, the Apartheid regime chased him away from the town to an area where his clients could not easily reach him.

- In 1952, he was at the head of formulating a plan to ensure that the ANC remained in contact with the people through organizing public meetings.
- He strongly opposed the Bantu Education Act of 1953.
- In the late 1950s, he turned his attention towards the exploitation of labour, the press laws, the Bantustans policy and the Universities Act of 1959. It was such activities that made him in the 1950s a victim of torture by the Apartheid regime.
- After the Sharpeville demonstration of 1960, Mandela who was still on trial for treason was detained.
- In 1961, the treason trial failed and ANC was banned from operation.
- From then onwards, Mandela became the most important figure in ANC leadership since his underground branches became very important in the face of this ban.
- In March 1961, 1,400 delegates met in Pietmaritzburg to map out a future for South Africa and Mandela was the key note speaker.
- At the conference, he warned the Apartheid regime that unless it involved all in people in the politics of their country, he was going to organize a general strike which he later did.
- He therefore moved all over the country disguising himself on many occasions to avoid being arrested.
- It was this successful dodging of police arrest that got him the name the **Black Pimpernel**.
- In 1961, his friends formed the Spear of the Nation (**Umkhonto Wesizwe**) an armed wing of the ANC of which Nelson Mandela was the commander in chief.
- In 1962, he left the country secretly and attended military training in Algeria and many conferences like the Pan African Congress of 1963 in Ethiopia.
- While out of the country, he arranged for the training of the ANC freedom fighters in friendly countries like Tanganyika.
- When he returned to south Africa, he was charged for unlawfully leaving the country and inciting strikes and therefore he was given five years imprisonment.
- While serving his sentence, he was charged in the Rivonia trial with sabotage.
- He was sentenced for life imprisonment on the notorious Robben Island prison off the Cape Town coast.
- While in prison, he received offers of freedom in exchange of his relaxation against the Apartheid regime but he refused.
- On 11th February 1990, he was released and assumed the Presidency of the ANC in 1991 at the National Conference. When he was released, he suspended the armed struggle.
- In 1993, he accepted the noble prize on behalf of all the South Africans.
- On 10th May 1994, he led the ANC into power following his victory in the first multi-racial elections in South Africa.
- In June 1999, he retired from public life and **he died on 2nd December 2013**.

GOVAN MBEKI 1910 – 2001

Explain the role played by Govan Mbeki in the struggle for the independence of South Africa.

- **Govan Mbeki Achibald Munyelwa** was born in **1910** in Transkei and attended a mission school for his lower education.
- Later, he got a bursary at Fort Hare University where he graduated with a Bachelors of Arts Degree in 1937.
- He joined ANC while a student in 1935 and he became a leading member of this party.
- As an individual, he was a communist politician and a leading member of the South African Communist Party (SACP).
- After completion of his studies, Mbeki taught briefly at Adams College but he was chased because of his political activities.
- He then took up the post of manager of a certain cooperative store and at the same time was the editor of the territorial magazine between 1938 and 1944.
- By 1941, he was a very active member of the **Transkei Voters Association**, a body that campaigned for the return of the Africans on to the common voters' register.
- Because of his outstanding role in the liberation struggle in Transkei, he was voted in 1941 as secretary of the Transkei Voters Association.
- The people of Transkei were so satisfied with his contribution such that in 1943, he was elected to the **Transkei Native Assembly** (Parliament).
- In 1943, he was a leading member in preparing a document known as the **African Claims** which pointed out the genuine demands of the ANC. These claims were later incorporated into the **Freedom Charter of 1955**.
- After the destruction of his cooperative store, he shifted to editing a new magazine in Port Elizabeth known as **The New Age** which was a communist paper.
- From 1955, Mbeki came out strongly and declared his support to the liberation struggle in South Africa.
- While at Port Elizabeth he popularized the ANC struggles and actually made Port Elizabeth the center of ANC activities in the country.
- He came up with the **“M” plan** which aimed at creating many party branches to increase the spread of nationalistic messages and the organization of the ANC.
- He was elected as the national chairman of ANC in 1956 the same year in which he took over the leadership of the ANC in Eastern Cape.
- As a result of his activities, he was arrested twice in 1960 and 1961 though he was released only to be under house arrest in 1963.
- He went underground after the above incident and he joined the **Umkhonto Wesizwe** (spear of the nation).
- In July 1963, while he was at a secret headquarters of Umkhonto Wesizwe at Rivonia, he was arrested.
- Together with others, they were charged of treason and in 1964 he was sentenced to life time imprisonment on the infamous Robben Island.
- His most famous book known as **“The Peasant Revolt”** highlighted the struggles of the Africans towards the apartheid. Apartheid was banned in South Africa after its publication in England in 1964.
- After 24 years in prison, he was released in 1987 with orders that he is restricted to only Port Elizabeth but he continued with his opposition to Apartheid.
- After political liberalization in 1990, Govani Mbeki became a member of the ANC interim leadership committee.

- He groomed his son Mbeki junior who from 1996 became the vice president of Mandela and ANC.
- Govani Mbeki however became a permanent delegate for the Eastern Cape to the national council of provinces.
- In 1999, Mbeki retired from active politics the same year that his son assumed the leadership of South Africa as the new president.
- Govani Mbeki died in 2001.

WALTER SISULU 1912 – 2003

What contribution did Walter Sisulu make towards the struggle for the freedom in South Africa?

- He was born in 1912 in the district of Transkei to a white father though his mother was black.
- He received his education from a certain Anglican mission school and thereafter resorted to gold mining though later he became a manager of an estate agency.
- In 1944 together with Oliver Thambo and Nelson Mandela, he played a big role in forming the ANC Youth League. This was after 1940 when Walter Sisulu joined the ANC and he became an active member of the party.
- Later he was elected as a treasurer of the youth league and became one of its key leaders.
- In 1949, he assumed the bigger post of Secretary General of the ANC.
- His anti-Apartheid activities made him an enemy of the government and from 1956 he started facing arrests from the government.
- In 1956 he was charged with treason but was acquitted in 1961.
- After the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960 when the government banned the ANC, Walter Sisulu and others were repeatedly arrested and tortured by the authorities.
- In 1963, because of the persecution of the nationalists by the government, Walter Sisulu went underground.
- In 1963 Walter Sisulu was arrested and was like others charged in the infamous Rivonia trial.
- In order to please the international community, Walter Sisulu was released together with seven other nationalists in October 1989.
- When ANC was allowed to operate again, Walter Sisulu resumed his leadership of ANC.
- In 1991, he was elected deputy president of African National Congress.
- He died in 2003 after playing a great role in the liberation struggle.

STEVE (STEPHEN) BIKO 1947 – 1977

Explain the contribution of Steve Biko towards the struggle for the independence of South Africa.

- He was born in 1947 in **King Williams Town** present day **Eastern Cape Province**.
- He was one of the militant nationalists who spearheaded many anti-apartheid demonstrations.

- He became very prominent from the late 1960s until 1977 when he became a national hero after being killed in prison.
- As a young man, Steve Biko enrolled with the University of Natal in 1966 to study medicine.
- But in 1972, he was expelled from the university because of his involvement in anti-apartheid activities.
- Steve Biko founded the **South African Students' Organisation** (SASO) in 1969 as well as the **Black Conscious Movement** (BCM) in the 1970s.
- He recruited many students into the BCM, leading to a wave of demonstrations by school children and adults.
- By 1976, such student demonstrations had led to the death of some children.
- He was important in opposing the introduction of Afrikaans in the Soweto schools since could lead to the dangerous assimilation of the Blacks.
- Biko became the **president** of the of the African students' organization, a position which enabled him to form other Black groups opposed to Apartheid.
- The Apartheid regime at first did not see the BCM and other African organizations as a threat to it, but their anti-Apartheid activities started attracting punitive measures from the 1970s.
- Consequently, by 1973 Steve Biko had been banned from many public activities and arrested several times.
- In August 1977, he was arrested again after many serious students' demonstrations which had caused more death.
- He was imprisoned by the white police men who severely beat him up leading to his death in police custody.

OLIVER TAMBO 1917 – 1993

Describe the contribution of Oliver Tambo in the struggle for the independence of South Africa.

- Oliver Tambo was born in 1917 in Transkei.
- He was educated in mission schools from 1924-1937 and Fort Hare University from 1938-1941 where he graduated with a Bachelor of Science Degree.
- He joined the ANC in 1944. Together with Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu, they founded the ANC Youth League.
- At this time, most of his political activities against the whites were conducted from Johannesburg, where he was a teacher at St. Peters' Secondary School.
- In 1955, Oliver Tambo became the Secretary General of the ANC and later in 1958, the ANC Deputy President to Albert Lithuli.
- In 1956, he was arrested over charges of treason but only to be released in 1957, due to lack of enough evidence.
- After the Sharpeville massacre of March 1960, the ANC was declared as an illegal organization and therefore, Oliver Tambo fled to exile in Zambia.
- While in Zambia, Oliver Tambo became acting President of the ANC after the death of Albert Lithuli and later became full President.

- He published some anti-Apartheid books like “**Oliver Tambo Speaks: Preparing for Power**”, which was published in 1988.
- In 1989, he suffered a stroke but continued to hold the ANC presidency till Mandela’s release in early 1990.
- In 1993, Oliver Tambo passed away.

ROBERT MONGALISO SOBUKWE 1924- 1978

What was the contribution of Robert Sobukwe in the liberation struggle of South African Freedom?

- Robert Sobukwe was born in 1924.
- He was educated at Lovedale Mission School and Fort Hare University College.
- While studying at Fort Hare University College, he became politically active as the Secretary-General of the ANC Youth League.
- He later taught at the University of Witwatersrand as a language teacher.
- He later resigned his teaching post to edit a newspaper known as “**The Africanist**” for two years. This paper was against the Apartheid government.
- In 1959, he broke away from the ANC and formed the **Pan-African Congress (PAC)** which organized a number of demonstrations against the Pass Laws.
- On the day of the Sharpeville massacres, March 21, 1960, Robert Sobukwe was arrested and sentenced to three years in jail.
- This was followed by six years in prison on Robben Island.
- After his release in 1969, he was subjected to the Banning Order which placed him under house arrest for life.
- Despite this, he managed to qualify as a lawyer in 1975 and practiced law until his death in 1978

CLEMENT KADALIE

Describe the role played by Clement Kadalie in the struggle for independence in South Africa

- He was born in **1896** in **Northern Nyasaland** present day **Malawi**.
- He was educated in Malawi where he became a **primary teacher**.
- He taught briefly before seeking employment in the neighbouring countries.
- In early 1915, he travelled far and wide to **Mozambique** as well as Rhodesia present day Zimbabwe and then South Africa.
- He reached South Africa in 1918 where he befriended **Arthur F. Batty** – a trade unionist and political activist.
- He had spent his early life as a **clerk** on a **cotton farm** in Mozambique and Zimbabwe.
- As a migrant worker he was employed in Cape Town in early 1919.
- He started the **industrial and commercial union** which later became the **Industrial and Commercial Workers’ Union** of South Africa.

- The union protested against the unfair labour laws and called for workers' rights.
- He successfully organized the **dockworkers' strike** which prevented the export of all goods through Cape Town harbour.
- The strike laid the foundation for Clement's development into a leader known to thousands of people in South Africa.
- He became a **leading trade unionist** in South Africa.
- His example won him many sympathizers to the Trade union that he had formed.
- He therefore fits well in the generation of Pixley Ka Isaka Seme, Dube and Xuma.
- He was a moving and **persuasive speaker** and therefore able to explain the African pressing problems.
- He expressed his anger about oppression and exploitation of the blacks.
- He even made many blacks to believe that change was immediate.
- He was considered among Blacks to be their immediate liberator. As a result, the ICWU membership increased e.g. at its peak, it had between 150,000 and 200,000 members of the ICU.
- Clement Kadalie's **ICU** branches were opened up throughout South Africa.
- He made prominent politicians like Hertzog and Malan to be polite to him since they feared that he could turn the Cape Africans and coloured against them.
- The Trade Union (ICWU) was the first of its kind thus shook the whites.
- He fought for the Blacks as well as the coloured rights in Cape Town.
- He mobilized skilled and unskilled workers in a more powerful strong organization.
- He fought against injustice in South Africa.
- He fought against **racial discrimination** against the Blacks.
- He fought against enslavement of the Blacks by the whites.
- He fought against poor housing conditions in the mines
- He was hurt **by the mining accidents** which resulted into the death of many Africans.
- He was not happy with the continued torture or mistreatment of Blacks in their places of work.
- He fought for the improved general welfare of the Black workers in South Africa.
- In the 1920s, the ICWU prospered but the leaders found it hard to use it as an instrument to win advantages for African workers.
- Clement Kadalie's activities were soon challenged **internally** and **externally**.
- His ICWU began to face leadership, financial, size and harsh law challenges.
- On **24th November 1924**, he was arrested and issued with a deportation order.
- He was blacklisted as an illegal immigrant and required to leave South Africa within three days.
- The union further collapsed when **Harry Champion of Zululand** split to form another trade union in Natal, a predominantly Zulu organization.
- In 1919 he resigned and was replaced by **William Ballinger**.
- **The ICWU** responded to African grievances and provided hope for freedom.
- It greatly influenced the consciousness or development of political understanding of the Black workers in cities, towns as well as up country.
- He made assurances of liberation and restoration of African land.
- He influenced African chiefs like the Swazi chiefs to influence their followers into becoming members of the ICWU.
- Clement Kadalie helped more aware to make Blacks of the white exploitation.

- He successfully united the African workers together despite their different loyalties.
- His work made him an important figure in the History of Black labour in South Africa.
- Despite his death, Clement Kadalie's work left a rich history for future liberation challenges.

PIXLEY KA-ISAKA SEME

What role did Pixley Seme play in the struggle for the independence in South Africa?

- He was one of the **earliest** South African nationalists.
- He was in the generation of John Dube, Solomon Plaatje, Tenga Tabavu etc.
- He was a **Zulu** and educated in Natal and abroad qualifying as a **lawyer**.
- He delivered a **prize winning address** during his study abroad.
- At first, he had a dream of re-building the Zulu Nation. However, he abandoned it in favour of African Nationalism in order to address African problems.
- He demonstrated his frustration to the unfairness in the white union **constitution of 1910**.
- He fought the exclusion of the blacks in the national politics of South Africa.
- He called for an African voice in the making of laws.
- He also wanted Africans to participate in the administration of South Africa.
- He strongly criticized white **racial discrimination** against the blacks.
- He called for **racial harmony**(equality) for all races in South Africa.
- He promoted **National Unity** among various groups of people in South Africa.
- He also **started the** idea of seeking foreign assistance to the pressing challenges in South Africa.
- He supported the **Ghandism approach** of non-violent means of achieving freedom for all. He thus discouraged the use of **militant means** against racial segregation.
- He discouraged boycotts and strikes against the whites.
- He encouraged an understanding between the white government and the Black people.
- He fought against the enslavement of the Blacks.
- He fought against economic exploitation of the blacks by the whites.
- He wrote extensively in his Newspaper "**Abant Bathu**" or "**Our people**" about the unfairness against the blacks.
- The newspaper was first established in **English**, then later in the other three Bantu languages. However, the white government later forced this newspaper to close down.
- In 1911, Pixley made an important **pronouncement** (statement) in which he urged the "Africans to forget all their past differences and come together for a common cause"
- The pronouncement laid a foundation for the formation of the **South African Native National Congress (SANNC)**.
- He teamed up with Sol Plaatje and Dr. L.J. Dube, to start the **SANNC** on **8th January, 1912**. The **SANNC** later became the future **ANC**.

- His mistakes and weaknesses later became future political strategies e.g. Clement Kadalie formed the ICWU in 1920 after correcting some of the weaknesses of SANNC.
- He fought the **unfair land distribution** in South Africa e.g. He condemned the Land Act of 1913 which left the Africans with only 13 percent of the land (13%).
- During this struggle, he bought land in the Eastern Transvaal and **set up the African Farmers' Association.**
- He thus encouraged the African farmers to acquire modern farming methods and buy more farm land.
- He fought the **pass laws** which restricted African movements in South Africa.
- He became the **president** of the ANC from 1930-1936.
- When his strategy of non-violence failed, a change to the **violent approach** of achieving independence was adopted.
- His philosophy of racial harmony and equality led to the formation of the **Freedom Charter of 1955.**
- His example provided a ground for the future Nationalists upon which the ways and means of achieving freedom were adopted. In 1959 Leballo teamed up with Robert Sobukwe to start the PAC.
- Seme **died in 1951** but he left a rich foundation upon which future Nationalists built to achieve the freedom in South Africa.

REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF APARTHEID IN 1994

- The following reasons/factors led to the collapse of Apartheid in South Africa by 1994;
- The role of the United Nations Organization (UNO) which imposed economic sanctions on the Apartheid regime.
- The role of Organisation of African Unity.
- The attainment of independence by the neighbouring states like Angola and Mozambique in 1975 made the South Africans to work hard.
- The role of Fredrick De'Clerk who was the last Apartheid leader.
- The role of the Anglican Church under Archbishop Desmond Tutu led to the collapse of Apartheid.
- The role of the Common Wealth Organization.
- The role of **South African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC)** formed in 1979 with its headquarters at **Gaborone** in Botswana.
- The role of South African women like Winnie Mandela.
- The role of Frontline States.
- The role of ANC and its armed wing i.e. the *Umkhonto Wesizwe* (the Spear of the Nation).
- The role of the PAC and its armed wing known as the POQO.
- The role of the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The role of musicians like Lucky Dube, Chaka-Chaka etc. led to the collapse of Apartheid. They composed songs that condemned the Apartheid regime.
- The role of Nelson Mandela.

- The role other nationalists like Steve Biko, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Tambo among others.
- The role of the mass media. The newspapers as well as television stations and radios were used to expose the evils of the Apartheid regime which eventually weakened the government.
- The Sharpeville massacre of 1960 attracted the attention of the international community towards the suffering of the Blacks in South Africa.
- The role Trade Unions like the Congress of South African Trade Unions.

GERMANY RULE IN NAMIBIA (SOUTH-WEST AFRICA)

- Namibia was also known as South West Africa.
- The people who lived here were Khoisan, Bantu (Ovambo, Herero, Nama)
- Germany occupation of Namibia began as early as 1874 but with limited success.
- Effective occupation took place in 1884.

REASONS FOR GERMANY OCCUPATION OF NAMIBIA

Why did the Germans occupy Namibia?

- The 1870-71 Franco-Prussian war led to the rise of Germany into power.
- The increased Germany nationalism and more desire for territories i.e. it was fashionable for powers to win overseas colonies.
- The rise of Otto Von Bismarck created a Germany desire for colonies that pushed Germany into South West Africa thus occupying Namibia.
- The Berlin conference of 1884 recognized the Germany occupation of Namibia and gave them a free hand.
- The British occupation of Botswana in 1885, a neighbour of Namibia alarmed the Germans to act faster hence occupying Namibia.
- The Germans occupied Namibia for strategic reasons of using the Walvis Bay.
- The Germans wanted to establish a link between port Periquena and Pretoria for commercial reasons.
- The Germany occupation of Namibia was an appeal made by Germany missionaries for protection.
- The need to spread Christianity forced the Germans to occupy Namibia.
- The Germany –superiority feeling made them occupy Namibia to spread Germany culture.
- The passing of a bill by the Germany government to support the colonization of South West Africa in 1884 led to occupation of Namibia.
- The need to settle the Germany excess population also forced them to occupy South Africa.
- There was a need for the merchants and adventurers to use Namibia as a source of raw materials and market for German manufacturers.
- The German mission to civilize the world led to occupation of Namibia.

HOW THE GERMANS ACQUIRED SOUTH WEST AFRICA/NAMIBIA

How did the Germans acquire South West Africa (Namibia) as a colony?

- South West Africa (Namibia) was originally inhabited by the **Nama, Ovambo, and Herero**.
- Long before the Germans occupied this area, the territory had been regarded as a South African territory.
- Then Europeans began to show interest in the area and therefore the area was acquired due to increasing competition for colonies.
- The first to settle were the **missionaries** and these first occupied the coast.
- Examples of the first missionaries in South West Africa (Namibia) were Abraham and Christian Albrecht of London Missionary Society (L.M.S)
- They started a mission at Warmbad in the South in 1805.
- The London missionary society built a second mission station at Bethany in 1814.
- Through the missionary activities in South West Africa, the Germans gradually penetrated the country due to the conflicts between the Nama and Herero.
- In the effort to defeat the Nama, the leader of the Herero Samuel Maherero requested for German assistance.
- Later the missionaries reported the instabilities between the Nama and the Herero to their home government.
- German traders e.g. Franz Luderitz opened gates to German colonization of South West Africa.
- In 1883, the German government granted a charter /permission to Franz Luderitz to sign treaties with African chiefs in the area to purchase a territory from them.
- In 1883 Luderitz bought Angra Pequena, later Luderitz Bay and also the land lying five miles around it from a Nama chief Joseph Fredrick of Bethany.
- He began expanding this territory by signing other treaties and purchasing land from other chiefs.
- Later there was a scramble for South West Africa between the Germans and the British at the cape.
- Earlier in 1876, William Palgrave had been sent as a representative of the Cape colony government.
- In 1878, the British had annexed Walvis Bay to the Cape colony.
- However, the cape Parliament was not prepared to meet the costs of the annexation.
- Later, in 1880, the German chancellor Otto Von Bismarck asked the British government whether it was prepared to give protection to the German subjects in the area.
- When the British refused to reply, the Germans established their authority in the area.
- Due to this and the increased requests from the missionaries, the German Parliament agreed to take over Namibia.

- On 24th April, 1884, the Germans declared South West Africa as a German colony in order to take over Namibia.
- Once German had declared a Protectorate over the territory. She sent a special imperial commissioner Heinnch Goering to sign treaties with African chiefs and organize the new colony.
- He used direct rule to govern their new colony.
- He made use of African collaborators e.g. Khama Herero was the first to accept German Protection thought he later changed his mind in 1888.
- He also used military force e.g. the Germans sent a large military force into Herero land to force him accept their rule.
- He also constructed infrastructure e.g. railway line and roads to facilitate easy movement and administration.
- He used divide and rule e.g. in 1890, the Germans intervened in Herero dynastic quarrel. Samuel Maherero and Nichodemus Kavikunua both struggled to succeed Khama Herero who had died in the same year.
- The Germans helped Samuel Maherero to assume power.
- In certain for German support, Samuel Maherero had to sign a treaty of protection with the Germans.
- By 1900, Germans were fully established in Namibia.
- Later, when the Nama and Herero jointly rose up against the Germans the **Germans fought and defeated** them before establishment of firm rule over South West Africa.
- The German rule in South West Africa lasted till 1918.

EFFECTS OF THE GERMAN RULE ON SOUTH AFRICA

What effects did German rule have on South – West Africa up to 1918?

- There was German declaration of a Protectorate over South West Africa in 1884.
- German presence/occupation provoked mixed reactions from the African chiefs.
- There rule increased disunity between the Nama and Herero over their varied responses.
- The Nama Chief hated Herero's earlier collaboration with the Germans.
- The Herero lost land to the Germans due to the rule imposed by the Germans.
- There were increased German settlers in South West Africa e.g. by 1913 there were 14,500 Germans settlers in Namibia.
- The Germans rule led to grabbing thousands of acres of Herero grazing land South of the boundary.
- The rule led to the outbreak of the Herero boundary war in March 1896. The Herero who opposed to land policy were defeated.
- The captured Herero went to Windhoek to work as prisoners of war.
- It led to loss of cattle due to German dubious acts e.g. unfair trade, credit resettlement and scientific means.
- Africans were forced to sell more land to the Germans settlers to pay their debt.

- It emanated into displacements of Africans resulted as their country was divided into white controlled areas.
- Africans lived a miserable life characterized by diseases and overcrowding.
- There was mal-German rule in South West Africa e.g. murder, imprisonment and public flogging, etc.
- Africans were made poor and poorer due to loss of land and cattle.
- The rule led to destruction of the Herero pastoral economy e.g. trade in Agriculture.
- The German rule resulted into over taxation of Africans.
- There were increased missionary activities in South West Africa (Namibia).
- The rule led to loss of African culture e.g. traditional worship, dress code, initiation ceremonies, etc.
- It resulted into the spreading and converting of Africans into Christianity.
- It led to introduction of formal education in South Africa i.e. teaching Africans how to read and write.
- African traditional religious men e.g. Starman came up to challenge the Germans.
- The German rule led to the outbreak of Nama-Herero uprising of 1904-1907.
- There was depopulation as three quarters of the Herero and half of the Nama were killed.
- It led to growth of African Nationalism as the Nama joined the Herero to fight for their freedom and independence.
- African chiefs fled to the neighbouring countries following the Nama-Herero rising e.g. Samuel Maherero escaped to Transvaal and died in 1923, Jacob Morenga fled to Bechuanaland and in 1909 agreed to remain there.
- It resulted into the death of some African chiefs e.g. Hendrick Witbooi (Nama) Nichodemus and Kahimema (Herero) were killed in action.
- It led to the introduction of harsh reforms by the Germans to silence the Africans.
- A pass system was set up to forbid African movement.
- Chieftdoms were abolished in Namibia as a result of the German rule.
- The rule increased the enslavement of Africans on German farms.
- Communication and infrastructure development came up e.g. roads, railway, hospitals, etc.
- More incentives were offered to the German settlers to come and settle in Namibia.
- Africans lost their dignity as they were made second class citizens.
- There was development of trade between Africans and the Germans at the coast.
- There was development of dependence system among Africans i.e Africans started depending on the whites.
- There was introduction of new crops e.g. cotton, coffee the sugarcane.

THE NAMA-HERERO REBELLION OF 1904-1907

- The Nama-Herero rebellion took place in South West Africa/Namibia.
- It was a conflict between Africans and the Germans who had colonized Namibia by 1884.
- The rebellion involved both the Nama and the Herero.

- The Nama were the first to revolt on 12th/January 1904 and were followed by the Herero in October 1904.
- The Nama were led by Hendrick Witbooi and Jacob Morenga whereas the Herero by Chief Samuel Maherero.
- The Germans were led by General Lothar Von Trotha and Governor Leutwein.
- The rebellion began in 1904 and ended in 1907 with Germany victory.

CAUSES OF THE NAMA-HERERO REBELLION

Explain the causes of the 1904 Nama-Herero rebellion.

- The long held hatred and enmity between the Africans and the Germans caused the rebellion.
- The desire for the Africans to regain their independence from the Germans caused the war in 1904.
- The failure of the Germans to compensate the Africans for the loss of land also made the rebellion inevitable.
- The increased German population in Namibia worried the Africans thus causing the war.
- Forced labour on the white plantations with less or sometimes with no pay caused the rebellion.
- The German construction of the railway line through the Herero land also caused the war.
- The poor taxation system of the Germans caused the war i.e. the taxes were heavy and the methods of collection were cruel or brutal.
- The outbreak of famine in Namibia was blamed on the Germans thus making the war inevitable.
- The creation of reserves for the poor Africans coupled with bad conditions for poor Africans by the Germans also caused the war.
- The oppressive and harsh rule of Germans characterized by flogging, imprisoning and murder of Africans caused the war.
- The outbreak of rinderpest which reduced African cattle was blamed on the Germans thus creating a vacuum of the war.
- The directing of Africans to pay their debts in form of cattle by the Germans also caused the war.
- The undermining of the African culture by the Germans also made the war inevitable.
- The motivational and inspirational leadership of Samuel Maherero and Witbooi also caused the war.
- The influence of African Traditional Religion also caused the war i.e. prophet Starman influenced Africans to rebel against the Germans.
- The desire by Africans to protect their trade connections with the coast also caused the war.
- The long term mistrust and suspicion between the Germans and Africans also caused the war.

EFFECTS OF THE NAMA-HERERO

What were the effects of the Nama-Herero rebellion to the people of Namibia?

- The effects were positive and negative, political social and economic.
- The war led to the defeat of Africans by the Germans.
- The war led to massive loss of lives i.e. over 2000 fighters died in war.
- Africans lost their independence since they were defeated.
- The rebellion led to loss of African able leaders i.e. Hendrick Witbooi and Jacob Morenga were killed in the war.
- The population of Namibia reduced since people lost their lives.
- The war resulted into loss of African land to the Germans.
- The war led to the establishment of the German protectorate on Namibia.
- The conflict divided Africans since some supported the Germans while others fellow Africans.
- The war emanated into enforcement of Africans into reserves with poor living conditions.
- The war also led to enslavement of Africans on the German farms.
- The German population in Namibia increased to over 14500 by 1913.
- The Germans developed infrastructures like roads and railway lines in Namibia.
- The war led to a decline in economic activities like agriculture and trade.
- The war led to introduction of harsh taxes by the Germans to the Africans.
- The war also led to the disarmament of Africans by the Germans in Namibia to zero level.
- Africans lost their land and cattle after the war.
- The war led to introduction of Christianity and many people were converted.
- The war led to increased hatred and enmity between the Germans and the Africans.